Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary
Oxford Word Skills
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acknowledgements</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Starter unit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How to use a unit</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How to learn new words</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to do the exercises</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations and symbols</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Basic English

| 1 I can understand and say numbers | 14 |
| 2 I can tell the time             | 15 |
| 3 I can say days and dates        | 16 |
| 4 I can say countries and nationalities | 18 |
| 5 I can use classroom vocabulary  | 20 |
| 6 I can use English language words | 21 |
| 7 I can ask and answer questions about language | 22 |
| Review                        | 23 |

### People

| 8 I can give personal information | 26 |
| 9 I can fill in a form           | 27 |
| 10 I can talk about my family    | 28 |
| 11 I can describe physical actions | 30 |
| 12 I can name parts of the body  | 32 |
| 13 I can describe people         | 33 |
| 14 I can talk about character    | 36 |
| 15 I can describe relationships  | 38 |
| 16 I can say how I feel          | 40 |
| Review                        | 42 |
## Everyday life

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>I can describe my routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>I can talk about clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>I can buy clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>I can talk about money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>I can talk about the weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>I can talk about illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>I can get help at the chemist’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Food and drink

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>I can name meat and fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>I can name fruit and vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>I can buy food in a shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>I can order in a café</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>I can order in a restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Getting around

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>I can get around on buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>I can get around on trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>I can ask for and give directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>I can talk about roads and traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>I can understand signs and notices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Places

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>I can talk about my country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>I can talk about my town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>I can describe the countryside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>I can talk about shops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>I can talk about my home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>I can describe a kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>I can describe a bedroom and bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>I can describe a living room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Study and work

42 I can talk about my school 109
43 I can talk about university 112
44 I can name jobs 114
45 I can describe a job 116
46 I can talk about using a computer 118
47 I can use email and the Internet 120

Review 122

Hobbies and interests

48 I can say what I like 126
49 I can talk about sport 128
50 I can talk about my free time 130
51 I can talk about music 132
52 I can talk about films 134
53 I can talk about the media 136

Review 138

Holidays

54 I can arrange a holiday 141
55 I can book a hotel room 142
56 I can communicate in an airport 144
57 I can describe a beach holiday 146
58 I can describe a sightseeing holiday 147
59 I can use the bank and post office 148

Review 150

Social English

60 I can meet and greet people 153
61 I can use special greetings 155
62 I can ask for information 156
63 I can ask for things 158
64 I can invite people 160
65 I can make suggestions 161
66 I can offer, accept, and refuse 162
67 I can say sorry and respond 164
Language

70 I can use common adjectives 172
71 I can use common adverbs 174
72 I can use irregular verbs 176
73 I can use phrasal verbs 178
74 I can use prepositions of time 180
75 I can use time words and phrases 181
76 I can use prepositions of place and movement 183
77 I can use link words (1) 186
78 I can use link words (2) 188
79 I can use ‘have’ and ‘have got’ 190
80 I can use ‘got’ 192

Vocabulary building tables 199
Common irregular verbs 202
Answer key 203
Answer key to review units 225
List of spotlight boxes 235
Word list/Index 237
Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Biskai, Spain
English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
English Centre, Valencia, Spain
Tti School of English, London, UK
Bell International, London, UK
Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd and the students at International House, Bath, UK
Malgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Bruch, Anna Wruck and Iza Algernissen in Poland
They would also like to thank Scott Thornbury and Rachel Dudley.

ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Andreas Schmidt (Germany)
Ayumi Whitehouse (Japan)
Funda Bolat (Turkey)
Esteban Cichello Hubner (Argentina)
Anna Anagnostopoulou (Greece)
László Rézméves (Hungary)
Ruth Cairns and Stuart Rodman (UK)
Marcelo Ritter (Brazil)
Jung Hyang Oh (South Korea)
Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise and revise new vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Basic level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, using the phone
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions of place, phrasal verbs

There is a particular emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English. This is continued at Intermediate level with the addition of more vocabulary from different styles of written English. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items as well as more idiomatic language.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000 which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. at the moment, never mind, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. main course in a restaurant, or hand luggage at an airport.
We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings. (See How to learn new words in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through visuals, tables or different types of text, including dialogues. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying mini-glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings ‘About you’ or ‘About your country’. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner’s answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.
Starter

A How to use a unit

Study the new words. They are usually in bold type.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the wordlist (page 235) to find out how to say the words.

27 I can order in a café

Glossary

Sometimes a glossary explains the new words.

A ‘spotlight’ tells you about important words.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (page 203).

Use the cover card to test yourself.

There's more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.
B How to learn new words

- Repeat the words two or three times to help you remember them.

- Use a coloured pen to help you remember difficult words.

- Write down new words in a notebook. Write the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.

- Write the words in sentences. Say them to yourself.

- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you’ve studied all the units in that module (e.g. Basic English).

- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (pages 199 to 201).

- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for links to more practice and other useful websites.

3 Make the names of vegetables from the letters.

   - use, peas
   - raw carrot
   - onion

4 Use a pencil. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.

Oxford ESSENTIAL Dictionary
Buy a good dictionary for your level. The Oxford Essential Dictionary (Oxford University Press) is very good for elementary and pre-intermediate learners.
C How to do the exercises

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tick</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underline</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross out</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>The 'r' in 'broccoli' is missing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>'2 + 2 = 4' is right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>'2 + 2 = 5' is wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>If something is a mistake, it's wrong. e.g. English (The 't' is a mistake.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>Make something right. e.g. English (wrong) English (right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>e.g. London is in England. That's true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>e.g. Paris is in Italy. That's false. It's in France.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the same</td>
<td>e.g. Small and little are the same. (small = little)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>e.g. Big and small are different. (They're not the same.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>Find something that you can put with another thing. e.g. 1 I'm from _____ a music 2 I can speak _____ b Japan 3 I like _____ c English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missing</td>
<td>If something is missing, it is not there. e.g. He comes New York. The word from is missing. (He comes from New York.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover</td>
<td>Put one thing over another thing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tick</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is a table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tick</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Column

The table has two columns: a column for 'words' and a column for 'meanings'.

Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the meaning. Can you remember the meaning?
Abbreviations and symbols

opposite. Old is the opposite of young.

informal. If a word or phrase is informal, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know very well. The opposite is formal. If a word or phrase is formal, you use it at important and serious times with people you don’t know very well, or in written English.

e.g. for example: Fruit. E.g. apples and bananas.

v uncountable noun. These nouns have no plural form and can’t be used with a or an.

past tense (past simple form of an irregular verb)

past participle

Vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>i:</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>/sɪ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>happy</td>
<td>/ˈhæpɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>/sɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>/tɛn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>hat</td>
<td>/hæt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o:</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>/ˈfɑːðər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u:</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>/sɔː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>/pʊt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u:</td>
<td>casual</td>
<td>/ˈkæʒənal/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>cup</td>
<td>/kʌp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>/bɜːd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>/ˈaʊt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ət</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>/seɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æo</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>/ɡoʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æt</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>/fɪv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æu</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>/naʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æt</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>/boʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æɹ</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>/nɪr/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əə</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>/hɛə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əə</td>
<td>sure</td>
<td>/ʃʊə/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Consonants

| p   | pen   | /pɛn/ |
| b   | bad   | /bæd/ |
| t   | tea   | /tiː/ |
| d   | did   | /dɪd/ |
| k   | cat   | /kæt/ |
| g   | got   | /ɡɑt/ |
| tʃ  | cheap | /tʃeɪp/ |
| dʒ  | jam   | /dʒæm/ |
| f   | fall  | /fæl/ |
| v   | verb  | /vɜːb/ |
| θ   | thin  | /θɪn/ |
| ð   | this  | /ðɪs/ |
| s   | so    | /soʊ/ |
| z   | zero  | /ˈzɜrəʊ/ |
| ʃ   | shoe  | /ʃuː/ |
| ʒ   | television | /ˈtelɪvɪʃn, telɪˈvɪʃn/ |
| h   | hat   | /hæt/ |
| m   | map   | /mæp/ |
| n   | no    | /noʊ/ |
| η   | sing  | /sɪŋ/ |
| l   | leg   | /leg/ |
| r   | red   | /rɛd/ |
| j   | yes   | /jɛs/ |
| w   | wet   | /wet/ |
1 I can understand and say numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>101</th>
<th>one</th>
<th></th>
<th>eleven</th>
<th>twenty-one</th>
<th>a/one hundred and one</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>two</td>
<td></td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>twenty-two</td>
<td>a/one hundred and forty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>three</td>
<td></td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>two hundred or two hundreds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>four</td>
<td></td>
<td>fourteen</td>
<td>forty</td>
<td>a/one thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1,050</td>
<td>five</td>
<td></td>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>a/one thousand and fifty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1,250</td>
<td>six</td>
<td></td>
<td>sixteen</td>
<td>sixty</td>
<td>a/one thousand two hundred and fifty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td></td>
<td>seventeen</td>
<td>seventy</td>
<td>two thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td></td>
<td>eighteen</td>
<td>eighty</td>
<td>a/one hundred thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td></td>
<td>nineteen</td>
<td>ninety</td>
<td>a/one million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2,000,000</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td></td>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>a/one hundred</td>
<td>two million or two-millions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In large numbers (over 999), write a comma (,) between thousands and hundreds, e.g. 11,000, and between millions and thousands, e.g. 3,000,000.

1 Correct the mistakes.

- thirty one     thirty one
- two hundreds   two hundreds
- three hundred forty     three hundred forty
- twenty two     twenty two
- 42500          42,500
- one thousand and two hundred     one thousand two hundred
- two thousand three hundred fifty     two thousand three hundred fifty

2 Write the middle number in words.

- 24 twenty-four     26  5  118     120
- 1 7                9  243     245
- 2 19               21  7  999     1,001
- 3 66               68  8  5,055    5,057
- 4 49               51  9  11,300   11,302

3 Write the number in words using about.

- sixty-eight people about seventy people
- ninety-seven euros
- nine students
- thirty-one years
- four hundred and ninety
- one thousand nine hundred and ninety
- seventy-eight people
- two hundred and forty-nine thousand
- nine hundred and eighty thousand

4 Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and say the numbers.
I can tell the time

A Telling the time

What's the time?

What time is it?

It's four o'clock.

It's five past six.

It's quarter past four.

It's twenty past six.

It's half past four.

It's twenty to seven.

It's quarter to five.

It's three minutes to seven.

It's four forty-five.

It's six fifty-seven.

Use minutes with to and past when the number of minutes is not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five, e.g. three minutes past six or three past six.

1 Write the times in words.

1 3.10 three ten

2 9.15

3 10.25

4 3.35

5 11.45

6 3.45

7 7.20

8 2.30

9 8.40

2 Write the times in words. Use past and to.

1 12.30 half past twelve

2 7.15

3 9.30

4 11.35

5 3.50

6 8.25

7 1.03

8 2.45

9 4.17

3 Test yourself. Look at the clocks. Cover the words and say the times.

B Giving more information

9 a.m. nine o'clock in the morning

12.00 p.m. midday

5 p.m. five o'clock in the afternoon

7 p.m. seven o'clock in the evening

7.57 nearly/almost eight o'clock

8.02 just after eight

11.30 p.m. eleven thirty at night

12.00 a.m. midnight

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

8.45 p.m. 8.45 in the evening S

8.45 p.m. nearly 8.00 D

1 12.00 at night midnight

2 4.00 a.m. 4.00 in the afternoon

3 6.32 nearly 6.30

4 11.45 p.m. 11.45 at night

5 8.43 nearly quarter to nine

6 2.17 quarter past two

7 12.03 p.m. just after midday

8 3.00 a.m. three o'clock

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 When do banks open in your country?

2 Do they close at midday?

3 What time do shops close?

4 What time do bars open?

5 What time do they close?

6 When do post offices open and close?
3 I can say days and dates  Do Unit 1 first

A Days, months, and seasons

days of the week | Monday | Tuesday | Wednesday | Thursday | Friday | Saturday | Sunday
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | ---
months of the year | January | February | March | April | May | June | July | August | September | October | November | December
seasons (in Britain) | spring (March – May) | summer (June – August) | autumn (September – November) | winter (December – February)
special days | Christmas Day (25 December) | New Year’s Day (1 January) | your birthday (the day you were born)

1 Put the words in the correct order. Write the number in the box.

1 Wednesday ☐ Saturday ☐ Monday ☐ Friday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Thursday ☐
2 autumn ☐ spring ☐ winter ☐ summer ☐
3 December ☐ March ☐ June ☐ February ☐ November ☐ January ☐ October ☐
April ☐ July ☐ September ☐ May ☐ August ☐

2 Write the next day, month or season.

1 Monday ___________________  2 August ___________________  3 spring ___________________
2 Sunday ___________________  4 November ___________________  5 Friday ___________________
3 Monday ___________________  5 March ___________________  6 March ___________________
4 Thursday ___________________  7 January ___________________
5 Friday ___________________  8 autumn ___________________
6 March ___________________  9 Wednesday ___________________
7 January ___________________  10 July ___________________

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Which month is your birthday?
2 Which season do you like best? Why?
3 Which day of the week do you like best? Why?
4 What do you do on New Year’s Day?
5 What are two other special days in the year, and when are they?

4 Test yourself. Cover the days, months and seasons, and say or write them.
### Ordinal numbers and dates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>first</th>
<th>6th</th>
<th>sixth</th>
<th>11th</th>
<th>eleventh</th>
<th>16th</th>
<th>sixteenth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>7th</td>
<td>seventh</td>
<td>12th</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
<td>17th</td>
<td>seventeenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>third</td>
<td>8th</td>
<td>eighth</td>
<td>13th</td>
<td>thirteenth</td>
<td>18th</td>
<td>eighteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>9th</td>
<td>ninth</td>
<td>14th</td>
<td>fourteenth</td>
<td>19th</td>
<td>nineteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>fifth</td>
<td>10th</td>
<td>tenth</td>
<td>15th</td>
<td>fifteenth</td>
<td>20th</td>
<td>twentieth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Complete the words.
   - 11th    5 th
   - 1 th    6 st
   - 2 nd    7 th
   - 3 rd    8 th
   - 4 st    9 th

6. **Saying and writing dates**
   
   **We can write the date like this:**
   
   10 March or 10th March or 3.10.05 or 3/10/05
   
   **We say the date like this:**
   
   *What’s the date today? ~ It’s March the tenth.*
   
   ~ It’s the tenth of March.
   
   **Say the year like this:**
   
   1980 *nineteen eighty* 1995 *nineteen ninety-five* 2006 *two thousand and six* 2020 *twenty twenty*

7. **Look at the calendar.**
   **Answer the questions.**
   **Write the dates as we say them.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>March</th>
<th>April</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When’s...

1. **the first Saturday in March? March the third or The third of March.**
   
2. **the second Tuesday in April?**
   
3. **the first Sunday in March?**
   
4. **the first Monday in April?**
   
5. **the third Thursday in April?**
   
6. **the fifth Saturday in March?**
   
7. **the third Wednesday in March?**
   
8. **the fourth Monday in April?**

7. **Write the dates or years as we say them.**

   6. **9 The sixth of September, or September the sixth.**
   
   1. 3.2
   
   2. 4.7
   
   3. 10.12
   
   4. 12.8
   
   5. 15.1
   
   6. 1989
   
   7. 21.5
   
   8. 30.11
   
   9. 22.4
   
   10. 2015
   
   11. Today’s date
   
   12. The date next Tuesday
4 I can say countries and nationalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area in the world</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality (Language)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>The Czech Republic</td>
<td>Czech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>Swiss (German, French, Italian)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia/Asia/India</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>Indian (Hindi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia/The Far East</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese (Mandarin, Cantonese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>South Korea</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Canadian (English, French)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The United States</td>
<td>American (English)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central America</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexican (Spanish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Argentinian (Spanish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Brazilian (Portuguese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Middle East</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Saudi (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Egyptian (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australasia</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australian (English)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same, e.g. Czech is the nationality and the language. Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from Mexico are Mexican, but they speak Spanish. Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with capital letters: Japan not Japan.

**highlight People from a country**
To talk about people from a country, we often add 's' to the nationality, e.g. Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks. Some plural forms are irregular: the British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss.

(Great) Britain = England, Wales, and Scotland
The United Kingdom/The UK = England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. Only people from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not English, but they are British.
1 True or false? Write T or F.
   1 Argentinians speak Spanish. __________
   2 Saudis speak Arabic. __________
   3 Mexicans speak Spanish. __________
   4 Thais speak Japanese. __________
   5 Hungarians speak Hungarian. __________
   6 Australians speak Australian. __________
   7 The Chinese speak Chinese. __________
   8 Brazilians speak Portuguese. __________
   9 Americans speak English. __________
   10 Czechs speak Polish. __________

2 Complete the sentences.
   1 China is in the __________. 
   2 Scotland is in Great __________.
   3 Hungary is in __________.
   4 Mexico is in __________ America.
   5 Thailand is in the __________ East.
   6 Argentina is in __________ America.
   7 Egypt is in __________.
   8 Saudi Arabia is in __________.
   9 India is in __________.
   10 Australia is in __________.

3 Write the names of the countries and languages.

4 Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ian</th>
<th>-ish</th>
<th>-an</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Test yourself. Cover the nationalities and languages in the table on page 18. Look at the countries and say the nationalities and languages.
5 I can use classroom vocabulary

1 board
2 board pen
3 noticeboard
4 bag
5 desk
6 CD player and CD
7 pen
8 pencil sharpener
9 ruler
10 pencil
11 folder
12 piece of paper
13 rubber
14 notebook
15 dictionary
16 table
17 chair
18 cassette player

1 Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (✗) by the things you can’t.
   ► pen ✓ 3 chair □ 7 dictionary □ 11 table □
   ► board ✗ 4 rubber □ 8 ruler □ 12 pencil sharpener □
   1 desk □ 5 board pen □ 9 noticeboard □
   2 piece of paper □ 6 CD □ 10 pencil □

2 Add another word to make a longer word or phrase.
   ► notebook □ 3 notice □ 6 CD □
   1 board □ 4 pencil □
   2 cassette □ 5 piece of □

3 ABOUT YOU Write four things you’ve got at home, and four things you haven’t got.
   ► I’ve got a dictionary.  I haven’t got a cassette player.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

20 BASIC ENGLISH
6 I can use English language words

noun adverb definite article

a sentence — An old man walked slowly down the hill.

adjective verb preposition

ind definite article plural noun (more than one)

He spoke to a little girl and two boys. "Good morning," he said.

pronoun singular noun (one) phrase

• There are eight words in the first sentence, and thirteen in the second.
• Walk is a regular verb; the past simple is walked.
• Speak is an irregular verb. The past simple is spoke, and the past participle is spoken. (The past participle is used to form the present perfect.)

1 Circle the correct answer.

► A and the are adjectives/articles.

1 A and an are definite/indefinite articles.

2 Woman is a noun/sentence.

3 Up is a preposition/pronoun.

4 Speak is a regular/an irregular verb.

5 Spoken is the past simple/past participle of speak.

6 Books is singular/plural.

7 Go and do are verbs/past simple forms.

8 Slowly and quickly are adverbs/phrases.

2 Find the answers for each sentence.

I have three English lessons every week.

► a verb

1 a pronoun

There's a young man from Rome in the class.

3 an adjective

4 a preposition

Today, he asked a question, and he spoke quickly.

7 an adverb

8 an irregular past simple

I think he's in the wrong class.

10 a singular noun

11 a sentence
7 I can ask and answer questions about language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What does ‘dreadful’ mean?</td>
<td>I don’t know. = It’s a new word for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not: What means ‘dreadful’?)</td>
<td>or It means ‘terrible’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s this called in English?</td>
<td>I can’t remember. = I knew the word yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but I don’t know it today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or It’s a stamp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you say ‘passport’ in English?</td>
<td>Passport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you explain ‘No vacancies’?</td>
<td>Yes, you see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not: Could you explain me ...?)</td>
<td>no free rooms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s the difference between ‘hello’ and ‘hi’?</td>
<td>The meaning is the same, but ‘hi’ is informal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s the opposite of ‘large’?</td>
<td>Small.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you pronounce ‘May’?</td>
<td>/mei/, like ‘day’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Right’ is pronounced /aɪt/. Is that right? or Is that correct?</td>
<td>No, that’s wrong. = That’s not right. It’s pronounced /aɪt/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you spell ‘apple’?</td>
<td>I’m not sure. = Is it one ’p’ or two?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or A-double P-L-E. (Double P = two Ps)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

1. How do you spell your name? ___
   a. It means ‘very small’.
2. How do you say ‘cup’ in German? _____
   b. It’s what you say when you meet a friend.
3. What’s the opposite of ‘closed’? _____
   c. D-E-double N-I-S. ✓
4. What does ‘tiny’ mean? _____
   d. /taɪni/
5. How do you pronounce “tiny”? _____
   e. No, it’s wrong.
6. Could you explain “How are you?” _____
   f. I don’t know.
7. ‘Question’ and ‘answer’ mean the same. Is that right? _____
   g. Open.

2 Complete the questions.

1. What’s this ____________ in English? = It’s a frying pan.
2. How do you ____________ “tomato”? = /toməˈtəʊ/.
3. ____________ you spell ‘eye’? = I’m not sure. I think it’s E-Y-E.
4. What’s the difference ____________ ‘bye’ and ‘goodbye’? = ‘Bye’ is more informal.
5. ‘Pen’ is the same as ‘pencil’. Is that ____________? = No, that’s wrong.
6. What’s the ____________ of ‘interesting’? = Boring.
8. Could you ____________ “EXIT”? = You see it on a door. It means that you can go out there.
Review: Basic English

Unit 1

Do the maths. Write the answer in words.

1. ten plus (+) seven = _______  
2. eight minus (−) three = _______  
3. three plus nine = _______  
4. four plus eleven = _______  
5. nineteen minus six = _______  
6. fifty minus five = _______  
7. eighty-seven minus eight = _______  
8. ninety-five plus seventeen = _______  
9. a hundred and five plus seventy = _______  
10. three hundred minus fourteen = _______  
11. twenty-eight plus thirteen = _______  
12. one thousand minus forty-seven = _______

Unit 2

Write the times in the box under the clocks. Then add 15 minutes to each time. Write the new times with past or to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time</th>
<th>07:50</th>
<th>08:10</th>
<th>08:00</th>
<th>08:05</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>five past</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half past</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+15</td>
<td>+15</td>
<td>+15</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>five past eight</td>
<td>five past eight</td>
<td>five past eight</td>
<td>five past eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ten to eight</td>
<td>ten to eight</td>
<td>ten to eight</td>
<td>ten to eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>02:20</td>
<td>02:20</td>
<td>02:20</td>
<td>02:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+15</td>
<td>+15</td>
<td>+15</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>midnight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>five to nine</td>
<td>five to nine</td>
<td>five to nine</td>
<td>five to nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 3

1. Complete the sentences.
   1. A What's the _______ today?
      B The fifth _______ October.
   2. A I don't like January.
      B Why?
      A Because it's the coldest _______ of the _______.
   3. A Which _______ do you like best?
      B Summer.
   4. A It's my _______ today.
      B Really? How old are you?
      A I'm going to California on New _______.
      B Fantastic!
2 Write the answers.
  ► What's the 1st day of the week? __Monday____
  1 What's the 3rd month of the year? ____________
  2 What's the 3rd season of the year in Britain? ____________
  3 What's the 4th day of the week? ____________
  4 What's the 5th month of the year? ____________
  5 What's the 6th day of the week? ____________
  6 What's the 7th month of the year? ____________
  7 What's the 9th month of the year? ____________
  8 What's the 11th month of the year? ____________

Unit 4

1 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with capital letters. Then write C for ‘country’ or N for ‘nationality’.

  ► Saudi N  5 __hina ______ 11 __reek ______
  ► Britain C  6 __zech ______ 12 __rench ______
  1 __aly ______ 7 __gypt ______ 13 __ermany ______
  2 __ungary ______ 8 __panish ______ 14 __ussia ______
  3 __xico ______ 9 __razil ______ 15 __gentinian ______
  4 __iss ______ 10 __urkey ______ 16 __ortugal ______

2 Complete the text.
My name’s Magda, and I’m studying __English__ in London at the moment. I’m from Po________ (1), and I live with two students: Silvia, who’s Br________ (2), and Irina who’s from the Cz________ Re________ (3). Irina speaks Cz________ (4) and Po________ (5). We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two Ja________ (6) students, a Ko________ (7), three Tu________ (8) women, a young It________ (9) girl, a Ch________ (10) boy and four students from Sp________ (11). Our teacher is Dennis, and he’s Au________ (12).

Unit 5

Write your answers.

  ► You put your things in this. __bag________
  1 The teacher writes on this in the classroom. ____________
  2 You use this if you make a mistake. ____________
  3 You put notices on this. ____________
  4 You find the meaning of words in this. ____________
  5 You sharpen pencils with this. ____________
  6 You write new vocabulary in this. ____________
  7 You listen to CDs on this. ____________
  8 You sit on this. ____________
  9 You sit at one of these. ____________ or ____________
  10 You can put pieces of paper in this. ____________
Unit 6

Find 12 more English language words in the square. Write them in the correct spaces below.

PAST SIMPLE
V STARTICLE EVP
DE UP SINGULAR
ING REGULAR DE
RT MOUDYLURJP
RE INTROSE KE O
ENLOADGTDCS
GCLUKERULETI
UEDNUWEMUIT
LYADVERBRMV
AROFOPHRASEO
RUWORDCOLRPN

Walked, went, saw ____________
1 I come from France. ____________
2 Quickly, slowly _______________
3 In, from, on _________________
4 Good afternoon, at school __________
5 Walk(ed), look(ed), listen(ed) __________
6 A, an, the _________________

7 He, I, they _________________
8 Table, go, very _______________
9 Different, old, big _______________
10 Boy (not boys) _______________
11 Do (did), go (went) _______________
12 Girls (not girl) _______________

Unit 7

Answer the questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

What does terrible mean? ________________
1 What’s the opposite of correct? ________________
2 What’s the difference between spelling and pronunciation? ________________
3 How do you say hello in your language? ________________
4 How do you pronounce explain? ________________
5 What does wrong mean? ________________
6 Tiny means the same as enormous. Is that right? ________________

7 What’s this called in English? ________________

8 How do you spell ________________

REVIEW: BASIC ENGLISH 25
8 I can give personal information

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The receptionist needs some information.

RECEPTIONIST: SANDRO
What’s your family name? — Bertoli.
And your first name? — Sandro.
Could I have your address? — 45 Alfred Road.
And the postcode? — CB2 4TX.

Now the receptionist is asking Sandro about himself and his family.

So, Sandro, where are you from? — Italy.
(or Where do you come from?)
Whereabouts in Italy? — Pisa.
(or Where in Italy exactly?)
What do you do in Pisa? — I’m a doctor.
(or What’s your job?)
And are you married or single? — I’m married.
Have you got any children? — Yes. A boy and a girl.
How old are they? — The boy’s six and the girl’s two.

1 In each question, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.

Are you married?
1 What do you do in your country? ____________________________
2 Where do come from you?
3 Could I your address have?
4 What’s your name family?
5 What’s your postcode?
6 How are old your children?
7 Have you got any children got?
8 What’s your name first?

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer these questions in Exercise 3.)

I need some information.

1 What’s your ________ name? — Kovacs.
2 And your ________ name? — Zsuzsa.
3 Where are you ________? — Hungary.
4 ________? — The capital, Budapest.
5 And ________ I have your address? — Tarcali utca 27.
6 And the ________ ? — 1113.
7 And what ________ you do? — I’m an engineer.
8 Are you ________? — No, I’m still single.
9 How ________ are you? — I’m 27.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions above, or ask another student.
9 I can fill in a form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>ABOUT YOU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>single or married man</td>
<td>Mr</td>
<td>Miss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married woman</td>
<td>Mrs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single woman</td>
<td>Miss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single or married woman</td>
<td>Ms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family name</td>
<td>surname</td>
<td>Rodriguez</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first name(s)</td>
<td>forename(s)</td>
<td>Maria Helens</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day, month, and year you were born</td>
<td>date of birth</td>
<td>12 June 1985</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nationality</td>
<td></td>
<td>Argentinian</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first language</td>
<td>mother tongue</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home address</td>
<td></td>
<td>California 2000; Piso 12 Buenos Aires C1289AAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone number during the day</td>
<td>daytime tel</td>
<td>[54] 11 4302 8000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no means “number”</td>
<td>mobile no</td>
<td>0341 241248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not email number</td>
<td>email address</td>
<td><a href="mailto:malena@latinou.com.ar">malena@latinou.com.ar</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married or single?</td>
<td>marital status</td>
<td>single</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job</td>
<td>occupation</td>
<td>sports teacher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elementary? intermediate? etc.</td>
<td>level of English (please tick)</td>
<td>elementary intermediate advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tick = ✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your written name</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>Maria Rodriguez</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 True or false? Write T or F.
   1. Miss = married or single woman ______ F ______
   2. Mrs = married woman ______
   3. Mr = single or married man ______
   4. surname = first name ______
   5. tick = ✓ ______
   6. forename = family name ______
   7. level = write your name ______
   8. marital status = married or single ______
   9. mother tongue = mother’s name ______
   10. email address = where you live ______
   11. date of birth = today’s date ______
   12. daytime tel = phone number during the day ______

2 ABOUT YOU Write your information in the table above.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
10 I can talk about my family

A Family tree

All the people here are Damon’s relatives.

Luke is Dave and Maggie’s son.
Karen is Dave and Maggie’s daughter.
Maggie is Dave’s wife.
Dave is Maggie’s husband.
Elsie and Alf are Maggie’s parents (= mother and father).

Complete the sentences about Damon’s family.

1. Paul is Elsie and Alf’s ______.
2. Maggie is Jack’s ____________
3. Jessica is Maggie’s ____________
4. Maggie is Jane’s ____________
5. Karen is Jessica’s ____________
6. Paul is Jane’s ____________
7. Elsie is Jessica’s ____________
8. Paul is Luke’s ____________
9. Maggie is Jessica’s ____________
10. James, Maggie, and Alf are Damon’s ____________

Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MALE</th>
<th>FEMALE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 brother</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 husband</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nephew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 relative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 son</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 brother-in-law</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 grandfather</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 grandson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 cousin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 uncle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Test yourself. Cover the male words in Exercise 2. Look at the female words. Say the male words.

ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and brother, sister, uncle, etc.
B Family history

My parents got married 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother, Luke, was born. Then I was born a year after that. I've also got a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so there are five of us in my family. Luke's got a girlfriend, Sue, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with our mum and dad. We spend a lot of time together.

Glossary
get married become husband and wife (got divorced stop being husband and wife)
be born start your life
have got have
there are five of us not we are five
friend/boyfriend see picture below
mum or mother
dad or father
spend time with someone be with someone and do things with them
together with each other

5 True or false? Write T or F.
1 Damon is Luke's older brother. ________
2 Damon's parents are divorced. ________
3 Damon was born after Luke. ________
4 Luke is younger than Karen. ________
5 Luke's mum has two sons. ________
6 Damon is Sue's boyfriend. ________
7 There are four in Damon's family. ________
8 Karen is the youngest in the family. ________
9 Damon and Karen are often together. ________

6 Write the words in correct sentences.
- his / divorced / are / parents
- born / / 1989 / in / was
- spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a
- older / my / than / friend / I / me / is
- in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us
- the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am
- brother / younger / ve got / sister / an / older / and / a / I

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
1 How many people are there in your family? ____________________________
2 When were you born? ____________________________
3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you? ____________________________
4 In your family, who do you spend a lot of time with? ____________________________
5 Do you all live together? ____________________________
11 I can describe physical actions

A Using your body 📌

sit down  🝈 sat down
stand up  🜕 stood up
ride  🜕 rode
jump
dance  🝈 climb
lie down  🜕 lay
fall over  🜕 fell over
run  🜕 ran
walk
get on  🜕 got on
get off

spotlight: Irregular verbs

The verbs sit, stand, run, fall, ride, lie and get are irregular. The past simple of these verbs is not formed by adding ed. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 202.

1 Write the present form of the verbs.

1 walked  🛴  3 rode  🛴  6 got on  🛴
2 lay down  🜕  4 climbed  🜕
2 fell over  🜕  5 sat down  🜕  8 stood up  🜕

2 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6 – 9.

I ___________ down at my desk and worked for two hours.
1 The children have to ___________ up when the teacher comes into the classroom.
2 I often ___________ to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
3 I want to ___________ Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
4 Do you often ___________ when you go to nightclubs?
5 The doctor asked me to ___________ down on the bed.
6 The boys ___________ into the swimming pool.
7 She ___________ her bike to school this morning.
8 I was late, so I ___________ to the bus stop, but I ___________ over.
9 She ___________ off the bus, went into the station and ___________ a train.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.
B Using your hands

- push
- hold
- put something down
- pull
- carry
- pick something up
- break
- give
- drop
- touch
- turn on
- close/shut

4 Make words from the letters.
- ivge: give
- rccay: carry
- nurt for: hold
- tpu wond: something
- seloc: pick
- thuco: break
- pord: open
- kpc pu: put
- kabre: break
- dlh: hold
- uphs: put
- thsu: turn
- pnoe: shut

5 Can you do these things with one hand or do you need two? Write 1 or 2.
- shut a dictionary 1
- give someone five dictionaries 2
- touch a bicycle 1 push a bicycle 2
- pick up a TV 1 turn on a TV 2
- break a bottle 1 open a bottle 2
- pull your hair 4 touch your hair 4
- turn off a radio 5 hold a radio 5
- drop a ruler 6 break a ruler 6
- carry a door 7 close a door 7
- pick up a baby 8 hold a baby 8

6 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.
I can name parts of the body

1. Head
2. Face
3. Hair
4. Eye
5. Ear
6. Nose
7. Cheek
8. Chin
9. Neck
10. Shoulder

11. Mouth
12. Lip
13. Tooth (plural teeth)

1. True or false? Write T or F.
I've got two...
- eyes T
- ears F
- necks F
- noses 1
- lips 2
- backs F
- waists F
- knees 5
- hands 9
- shoulders 6
- wrists 10
- ankles F
- heads 12
- fingers 23
- knee 24
- leg 25
- foot F (plural feet)
- ankle 27
- toes 28

2. Which one is different? Circle it.
- finger
- thumb
- hand
- foot
- wrist
- toe
- ankle
- arm
- hand
- stomach
- neck
- ears
- nose
- lips
- spine
- stomach
- fingers
- chin
- hair
- mouth
- teeth
- lips
- shoulders
- head
- arms
- legs
- feet

3. Complete the words.
- h...r
- c...n
- s...h
- c...t
- t...h
- b...h
- f...e
- n...e
- m
- k
- e
- t

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the parts of the body.
13 I can describe people

A General description

How tall is he? How much does she weigh?

He's 175 cms (tall).

She weighs about 60 kgs.

Tall average height short

slim average weight overweight

He's (very) good-looking, (very) attractive.

She's (very) beautiful, (very) attractive.

He's not very attractive.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you are overweight, you aren't slim. _____
- Average height means not tall and not short. _____
- Attractive and good-looking mean the same. _____
- You can say a man is good-looking or beautiful. _____
- If someone is fat, they are overweight. _____
- The answer to 'How much does he weigh?' is '200 cms'. _____
- 'How tall are you?' is correct. _____
- It is polite to call someone fat and ugly. _____
- Thin and slim mean the same, but thin is more positive. _____

2 Complete the dialogues. Don’t use the words in italics in your answer.

- Is he attractive? – Yes, he's good-looking.

- She's not tall or short, really. – No, she's average.

- Are the two brothers attractive? – Yes, they're both.

- Is she quite thin? – Yes, she's very.

- He's about average weight. – Yes, he weighs 75 kgs.

- Is he overweight? – Yes, he's a bit.

- Is she very attractive? – Yes, she's.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
## B Hair and eyes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long?</th>
<th>What colour?</th>
<th>What kind?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>blonde</td>
<td>straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium-length</td>
<td>light brown</td>
<td>curly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>dark brown</td>
<td>wavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>black</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He’s got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brown eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue eyes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| a beard | a moustache |

### 4 Cross out the adjective you don’t need.
- She’s got long, dark brown, black hair. (or She’s got long, dark-brown, black hair.)
  1 I’ve got medium-length, short, curly hair.
  2 Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
  3 My sister’s hair is short, long, and curly.
  4 My brother’s got short, grey, black hair and a moustache.
  5 My father’s got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.

### 5 Complete the questions. (You will write your answers in Exercise 6.)

**ABOUT YOU**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is your hair brown? Is it dark brown or light brown?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No, it’s blonde,_______________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is your hair long, m________, or s________?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What colour is it: bl________, bl________, or g________?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is your hair st________, w________, or c________?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have you got a b________ or a m________?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have you got br________ eyes?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5. Then, if possible, tell another person about yourself.

I’ve got long, dark hair and...
# How old are they?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Word/phrase</th>
<th>Spotlight</th>
<th>Other phrases for age</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18 months; before they can walk</td>
<td>a baby</td>
<td>in his teens (13 → about 17)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 → 10 or 11</td>
<td>a child plural children</td>
<td>in her early twenties (20 → 23)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 → about 17</td>
<td>a teenager or a young person plural young people</td>
<td>in my mid-thirties (34 → 36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 →</td>
<td>an adult</td>
<td>in his/her late fifties (57 → 59)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about 45 → 60</td>
<td>a middle-aged person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 →</td>
<td>an elderly man or woman (more polite than old)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.

- me (45) __________ a elderly
- my wife (38) __________ b in her late thirties
- my son (6 months) __________ c a teenager
- my daughter (7) __________ d in my mid-forties ✔
- my brother (47) __________ e a baby
- my nephew (14) __________ f in her early sixties
- my aunt (63) __________ g an adult
- my father (79) __________ h middle-aged
- my niece (21) __________ i a child

8 **ABOUT YOU** Write the names of people in your family, or tell another student.

- a baby Marcus (my sister’s son) 4 an elderly woman __________
- a young person __________ 5 an elderly man __________
- a middle-aged person __________ 6 a baby __________
- someone in his/her twenties __________ 7 someone in his/her fifties __________

9 Test yourself. Cover column two of the table. Look at the ‘age’ column and say the words and phrases.

10 Read the police description. Which man are the police looking for, X or Y?

The man we are looking for is in his mid-thirties. He is slim, with dark brown curly hair and a moustache. If you see him, please ring the police on 0088 997 4422.

11 Write a description of the other man. Use the text above to help you.

The other man is ________________________________
14 I can talk about character

A What's he/she like? 🌟

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendly</td>
<td>The students in my class are all really friendly: it's great.</td>
<td>happy to meet and talk to other people or unfriendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>He visited me a lot in hospital, which was really kind.</td>
<td>warm, friendly and always wanting to help other people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>I met Colin on holiday and he's a really nice guy.</td>
<td>kind and friendly (a very important word in spoken English) syn pleasant or horrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>I love Korea; she's great fun.</td>
<td>something or someone that makes you happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>John makes me laugh - he's just a really funny man.</td>
<td>making you laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxed</td>
<td>My parents are very relaxed: they don't get angry if I'm late.</td>
<td>calm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever</td>
<td>Tom is very clever - the best student in our class.</td>
<td>able to learn and understand very quickly syn intelligent or stupid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>She's quiet, but she can be funny.</td>
<td>someone who is quiet doesn't say very much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serious</td>
<td>I like our teacher but she's very serious.</td>
<td>someone who is serious thinks a lot and doesn't laugh very much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Complete the words.

- fin 4 n e
- f y 5 d r
- q t 6 f d y
- r l x d 7 le h

2 Answer the questions.

What's...
- a synonym for nice? pleasant
- the opposite of friendly?
- a synonym for clever?
- the opposite of nice?
- the opposite of clever?

- What do you call someone who...
  - likes meeting and talking to people? friendly
  - makes you laugh?
  - thinks a lot and doesn't laugh a lot?
  - is usually calm?
  - always wants to help others?

3 Complete the conversations.

1 What's Alex like? - He's nice, but he's very ___________. He doesn't laugh much.
2 What ________ Ana's parents like? - Well, her mother's great ___________; I like her very much. But her father doesn't like people very much - he's really ___________.
3 ________ was your grandmother like? - She was very ___________ - she always helped everyone. And she was ___________ too. She went to university.
We like each other

WHY WE LIKE 

each other

Gemma: "I met Sophie at university. I was on my own, and she came up and talked to me; she’s like that. What’s interesting is that we’re complete opposites. She’s very happy to meet new people, but I’m really shy; she’s very sociable, I’m quiet; she’s sporty, and I’m not. But it wasn’t important. We became friends and shared a flat for two years. I’m very organized and did most of the housework. Sophie’s not very tidy, and she can be lazy around the house. But she’s a great cook and a really nice person."

Find and write four more examples of really + adjective from page 36.

- really kind
- really happy
- really clever
- really lazy

Read the text again. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.

1. Gemma was alone when she met Sophie. T/F
2. Gemma and Sophie are very different. T/F
3. Sophie likes meeting new people. T/F
4. They lived together at university. T/F
5. Gemma’s sociable. T/F
6. Sophie’s very unfriendly. T/F
7. Sophie’s untidy. T/F
8. Gemma doesn’t plan things. T/F

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

What are you like? Are you...

1. sporty or not sporty?
2. a very relaxed person?
3. usually tidy or untidy?
4. lazy or hardworking?
5. quiet or very sociable?
6. a very organized person?

PEOPLE 37
15 I can describe relationships

A Romantic relationships

Max is my partner, and we have a very good relationship. We've been together for about two years. I started to go out with him after I came to London. We met at my ex-boyfriend's house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to get to know each other. Now Max wants us to get married and have a baby, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married couples who have split up and are now divorced. I don't want that to happen to us.

Glossary

partner someone you have a romantic relationship with
(your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband)
be together be in a romantic relationship
go out with someone have a romantic relationship with someone
ex-boyfriend a person who was your boyfriend in the past
(also ex-girlfriend, ex-wife, ex-husband)
get to know someone learn about and become friends with someone
get married become husband or wife
have a baby become a new mother/father
couple two people, often in a romantic relationship
split up stop having a romantic relationship
divorced married in the past but not now

1 Write the words in correct sentences.

They want to get married.

1. baby / last / had / a / year / they ____________________________
2. split up / January / they / in ____________________________
3. have / good / a / very / relationship / we ____________________________
4. you / how / her / get to know / did / ? ____________________________
5. three / together / for / they / years / were ____________________________
6. with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out ____________________________

2 Complete the sentences.

They have a very good relationship.

1. When did they _________ a baby?
2. My boyfriend and I have been _________ for two months.
3. I know Phil and Sue very well. They're a lovely _________.
4. She went _________ with him last year, but they split _________ in January.
5. Sonia is his _________ girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
6. My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're _________. My father has a new _________, but I don't think they're going to _________ married.
**B Friends**

**WHY WE LIKE each other**

Sophie: "I get on very well with Gemma - she's great. I don't know why, because we're completely different. We first met at university, and then we became flatmates. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I ask for advice - and she always gives me good advice. We don't see each other very often now, because we live in different parts of the country, but I've known her for a long time, and she will always be my closest friend."

---

**Glossary**
- **get on (well) with someone** have a good relationship with someone
- **meet** see and speak to someone for the first time
- **become flatmates** start to be flatmates (also become friends)
- **flatmate** person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
- **advice** an opinion or information that you give to help someone with a problem (You give advice or you give someone advice.)
- **see someone** talk to or visit someone
- **know someone** be friends with someone or have met them
- **closest friend** most important friend (also best friend)

**spotlight each other**

Pam and Mike really love each other.
(Pam loved Mike, and Mike loved Pam.)
The two girls never listen to each other.
(A doesn't listen to B, and B doesn't listen to A.)

---

**3 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. We met last year.</th>
<th>I have known her for a year.</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. We live near each other.</td>
<td>We are flatmates.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. We don't get on very well.</td>
<td>We have a very good relationship.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I see her every Saturday.</td>
<td>I meet her every Saturday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. She's my best friend.</td>
<td>She's my closest friend.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. We became friends.</td>
<td>We stopped being friends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. She gives me advice.</td>
<td>She helps me with my problems.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**4 ABOUT YOU** Write your answers or ask another student.

1. Who is your closest friend? ____________________________
2. How long have you known him/her? ________________________
3. Where did you meet? ____________________________
4. How did you get to know him/her? ________________________
5. How often do you see each other? ________________________
6. Why do you get on well with him/her? ________________________

---

**PEOPLE 39**
## 16 I can say how I feel

### Physical feelings 🌱

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter?</td>
<td>What's the matter? ~ Nothing.</td>
<td>What's the problem?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel tired</td>
<td>I feel tired. I'm going to bed.</td>
<td>want to rest or sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel hungry</td>
<td>I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?</td>
<td>want something to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel thirsty</td>
<td>I'm thirsty. Can I have a juice?</td>
<td>want something to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel boiling</td>
<td>I'm boiling. Can we open a window?</td>
<td>very, very hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel freezing</td>
<td>Where's my coat? I'm freezing.</td>
<td>very, very cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel nervous</td>
<td>Did you feel nervous before the exam? ~ Yes, I did, but it was OK.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel ill</td>
<td>He felt ill after the meal. I think he had too much to eat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not be/feel well</td>
<td>He doesn't feel well, so I told him to go to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 How do you feel? Write your answers.

- You're outside. It's -10 degrees. I'm freezing.
- It's the end of a working day. ____________________________
- It's minutes before an important exam. ____________________________
- You've had nothing to drink for hours. ____________________________
- You've had nothing to eat for hours. ____________________________
- You're working. It's 35 degrees. ____________________________
- Your body temperature is 39.5 degrees. ____________________________

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry?
- What's the matter? ~ I'm ill.
- Are you going to bed? ~ Yes, I'm going to bed.
- What's the matter? ~ I'm thirsty. I need a coat.
- It's very hot in here. ~ Yes, I know. I'm ____________
- Is it your driving test tomorrow? ~ Yes, and I'm feeling a bit ____________.
- ____________ the matter? ~ I don't feel ____________.

### 3 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meaning. Can you say the words?
B  Emotions

1. He's happy.
2. She's sad.
3. He's excited.
4. She's worried.
5. He's angry.
6. She's frightened.
7. He's embarrassed.
8. She's surprised.
9. He's in love.
10. She's upset.

Complete the words.

- ha ____________ 4. sca ____________ 8. emb ____________
- ang ____________ 5. sur ____________ 9. ex ____________
- wor ____________ 6. fri ____________
- up ____________ 7. unh ____________

Complete the sentences.

- I was ____________ when I heard that her mother was very ill.
  1. The teacher got ____________ because the children were running round the classroom.
  2. I got 100% in my English exam. I was very happy but also very ____________.
  3. I got very ____________ yesterday because I couldn’t find my credit card. I found it this morning.
  4. My brothers get very ____________ when they’re watching football on TV.
  5. I made a stupid mistake and everyone laughed. I felt very ____________.
  6. My sister and Joe are getting married. My parents are ____________ because they like him.
  7. I was very ____________ when my boyfriend found a new girlfriend.
  8. My aunt never travels by plane. She’s ____________ of flying.
  9. They met on holiday. I think they’re in ____________.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
Review: People

Unit 8

Complete the dialogue using information in the notes to help you.

A. Oh, where in Brazil (4) ____________ ?
B. São Paulo.
A. Right, and could (5) ____________ your address?
B. It’s Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63, São Paulo.
A. And the (6) ____________ ?
B. It’s 05065-002.
A. And what do you (7) ____________ ?
B. I’m (8) ____________ an art teacher.
A. Oh, really? And (9) ____________ married?
B. Yes, I am. And I’ve got a son.
A. Oh, (10) ____________ is he?
B. He’s seven.

Unit 9

Find 11 more words, phrases, or short words
from the unit. You can go up ↩, down ↘,
or across → .

Unit 10

Find 13 more family words in the word-square.
2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

- He's eighteen years. **He's** eighteen.
- My brother has eighteen years old. **My brother has eighteen years old.**
- I born in 1990. **I was born in 1990.**
- My sister is younger than me. **My sister is younger than me.**
- His parents are divorce. **His parents are divorced.**
- There are five of we in my family. **There are five of us in my family.**
- She is more old than her brother. **She is older than her brother.**
- Who is the youngest of the family? **Who is the youngest of the family?**

Unit 11

1 Complete the table with the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>push ✓</th>
<th>walk</th>
<th>pick something up</th>
<th>stand up</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>pull</th>
<th>jump</th>
<th>carry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drop</td>
<td>turn something off</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>put something down</td>
<td>climb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using your hands

- push

Using your feet or legs

2 Circle the correct word.

- You get off a bus/ a house. **off**
- You can open a door/ a light. **a door**
- You can touch a park/ a wall. **a wall**
- You can turn on a radio/ a watch. **a watch**
- You can pick up a car/ a bicycle. **a bicycle**
- You can ride a car/ a bicycle. **a car**
- You can hold a bag/ a classroom. **a bag**
- You can break some juice/ a pencil. **some juice**
- You can climb a tree/ a bus. **a tree**
- You can close a TV/ a book. **a book**
- You can sit down on a bed/ the sea. **a bed**

Unit 12

1 Above or below the waist? Write A (above) or B (below).

- foot B... 2 ankle A... 5 shoulder A... 8 knee B... 11 bottom B...
- head A... 3 foot B... 6 chin A... 9 toes B... 12 neck A...
- ears A... 4 chest A... 7 leg B... 10 nose B... 13 mouth A...

2 Write another part of the body which is between the other two. Look at the example.

- nose mouth chin 3 wrist fingers 6 eyes mouth
- hand shoulder 4 ankle toes
- chest head 5 back leg
Unit 13

1 Write about the people.

She’s tall, slim and attractive. She’s got medium-length, dark brown hair. She’s a teenager.

2 Put the words in order from young (1) to old (9).

- in your early thirties
- a baby
- a child
- in your mid-twenties
- elderly
- in your early sixties
- in your late thirties

Unit 14

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Positive or negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendly</td>
<td>unfriendly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the dialogues.

- She’s nice. – Yes, very ________.
- She doesn’t do any work. – No, she’s very ____________.
- Does she meet new people easily? – No, she’s very ____________.
- Did you live in the same place? – Yes, we ____________ a flat.
- I really like being with her. – Yes, she’s great ____________.
- She’s clever, isn’t she? – Yes, very ____________.
- Were you with other people? – No, I was ____________ ____________.
- She makes me laugh. – I know, she’s very ____________.
- She plans everything. – Yes, she’s very ____________.
Unit 15

1. Circle the correct word.
   Lucy ______ knew John at a disco when she was just twenty. She (1) got / went out with him for a year. Then suddenly, one weekend, he took her to Paris where they got (2) marry / married. They have a very good (3) relation / relationship, and they (4) get / go on well with each other's family, too. Last year, they (5) got / had a baby girl called Paula. They've been (6) together / each other for eight years now. I don't think they will ever split (7) off / up, or (8) get / go divorced, because they are a very happy (9) couple / two.

2. Complete the questions with a verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>become (x2)</th>
<th>is (x2)</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>get (x2)</th>
<th>are ✓</th>
<th>see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
   1. Are they married?
   2. How did you ________ to know Jack?
   3. __________ Elena your closest friend?
   4. Do you ________ your ex-boyfriend often?
   5. Does your mother ________ you good advice?
   6. How did you ________ flatmates?
   7. Do you ________ on well with your sister?
   8. ________ your cousin divorced?

Unit 16

1. Correct the spelling mistakes.
   ▶ He's frightend. ________
   1. Why are they exited?
   2. I'm hangry. ________
   3. She was very suprised. ________
   4. I think he was embarassed. ________
   5. I'm very worrid. ________
   6. I feel tierd. ________
   7. She's scard of dogs. ________
   8. Is he nervos? ________
   9. What's the mater? ________
   10. She's thursty. ________

2. Are these feelings positive or negative? Write P or N.
   ▶ She's very sad. N
   1. My daughter's excited about the dog. ________
   2. She's really unhappy at the moment. ________
   3. He was embarrased about it. ________
   4. I don't feel well. ________
   5. It's freezing in this room. ________
   6. My brother's in love. ________
   7. He's scared of her. ________
   8. I was very upset about it. ________
   9. I felt nervous before I met him. ________
   10. They're all happy. ________
I can describe my routine

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

What do you do on weekdays?

I usually get up at 7:00.
I have a shower.
I get dressed.
I have breakfast.
I usually leave home at 8:00.
I get to work at 8:30.
I finish work at 5:00.
I have dinner at 8:15.
I go to bed at 11:30.
I sleep seven hours a night.

Spotlight

I usually/normally go to work by bus means that I go to work by bus most days.

1 Match the verbs in column 1 with words in columns 2 and 3. Write the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I get up</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>before breakfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I get</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>at 11 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I have</td>
<td>seven hours</td>
<td>7:30 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I leave</td>
<td>dressed</td>
<td>at 6 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I finish</td>
<td>home</td>
<td>with my family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I have</td>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>a night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I go</td>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>at 8:00 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>I sleep</td>
<td>to bed</td>
<td>at 8:30 a.m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the questions with the correct verb. (You will write your answers in Exercise 3.)

ABOUT YOU

What time do you usually get up in the morning?

1 Do you _______ dressed before or after breakfast?
2 Do you _______ a shower in the morning?
3 What time do you _______ home in the morning?
4 What time do you _______ to school/university/work?
5 Who do you _______ dinner with?
6 What time do you normally _______ to bed?
ABOUT YOU
Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the sentences. Say the phrases.

B Weekends (Saturday and Sunday) 🎵

What do you do at the weekend?

During the week I usually stay in after school. I often study in the evenings, watch TV, listen to music, or just talk to my family. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or go and see a film. At the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning I usually go shopping with a friend, or I go to the gym, and sometimes I study in the afternoon. I go out with my boyfriend in the evening. On Sundays, I get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis.

Glossary

at the weekend on Saturday and Sunday
during the week from Monday to Friday
stay in stay at home
once a week one time in every week
twice a week two times in every week
come round come to my home
go out leave home to go to a bar, cinema, restaurant, etc.
go shopping go to the shops to buy clothes, CDs, etc.
(When you do the shopping you buy food.)
go to the gym

late after the usual time or early
go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself
play tennis

Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across ←.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the</th>
<th>shopping</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>week</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>once</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>twice</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>gym</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complete the sentences.

I go to a restaurant once or twice a week.

1. Do you want to __________ shopping?
2. Come __________ to my flat after work.
3. I can’t __________ tennis this weekend.
4. Do you want to go __________ on Saturday?
5. __________ the week I usually stay __________
6. I’m really tired today because I went to bed __________ last night.
7. What are you doing __________ the weekend?
8. I go to the __________ twice a week because I like to exercise.
9. I often __________ the shopping very __________, at 8.00 in the morning.
10. We often go and __________ a film on Sunday.

EVERYDAY LIFE 47
C Frequency words 📊

always   often   sometimes   occasionally   hardly ever   never

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occasionally</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hardly ever</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spotlight: every and all

Every day means 'he goes out on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and Sunday'. Be careful!

He works every day means 'he works from Monday to Sunday'.

He works all day means 'he works from 9:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m.'

7 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I always go shopping on Saturdays.</td>
<td>I go shopping every Saturday.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 I sometimes work at home.</td>
<td>I often work at home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 She's hardly ever late for work.</td>
<td>She's rarely late for work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 We often finish classes early.</td>
<td>We finish classes early every day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 She always has a shower in the morning.</td>
<td>She has a shower every morning.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 In August we play tennis every day.</td>
<td>In August we play tennis all day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 Write the sentences using a word from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>every day</th>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>hardly ever</th>
<th>all day</th>
<th>occasionally</th>
<th>never</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hiro goes to restaurants two or three times a week.</td>
<td>Hiro often goes to restaurants.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Haruko always gets up early.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Hiro goes to the gym once a year.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Haruko stays in seven nights a week.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Hiro studies from 9:00 to 5:00.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Haruko doesn't have a shower in the morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Hiro goes to the cinema about six times a year.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 ABOUT YOU True or false? If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hardly ever play tennis.</td>
<td>False: I often play tennis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 I always have a shower before breakfast.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I often go out on Friday evening.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I never listen to music in the evening.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I rarely study on Sunday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I sometimes watch TV at the weekend.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I never work in the evening.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I usually go shopping on Monday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I occasionally go to the gym after dinner.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18 I can talk about clothes

A Clothes

1. shirt
2. top
3. jumper
4. trousers
5. jeans
6. skirt
7. dress
8. T-shirt
9. jacket
10. suit
11. coat
12. raincoat

1. Complete the words.
   - 5 t
   - 6 T
   - 7 d
   - 8 j
   - 9 s

2. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Colours

white    cream    yellow    green    blue    purple    pink
brown    red      orange    grey     black    dark blue    pale blue

3. Look at the clothes above. True or false? Write T or F.
   - a green sweater  T
   - grey trousers   F
   - a black suit    T
   - a blue skirt    F
   - a red trouser   F
   - a brown jacket F
   - a pale blue shirt
   - a pale yellow top
   - a light blue coat
   - a pink raincoat

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the colours.
5 One word in each group is wrong. Cross it out.

- trousers ➔ Trainers ➔ jeans
- trainers ➔ boots ➔ gloves
- scarf ➔ umbrella ➔ tie
- jeans ➔ socks ➔ shoes
- sandals ➔ glasses ➔ hat
- glove ➔ watch ➔ hat
- scarf ➔ belt ➔ jeans

6 Make the sentences singular if possible.

- Are these your boots? Is this your boot?
- Her glasses are nice. Not possible
- Give me the socks.
- Where are my tights?
- I've got two pairs of sandals.
- Do you like my new trousers?
- She's wearing my scarves.
- Where are my gloves?
- The jeans cost €20.
- I don't like these sunglasses.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1. What are you wearing today?
2. What clothes do you wear at the weekend?
3. Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?
4. Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?
5. How often do you wear a hat? a scarf? a watch?

8 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

---

spotlight Plural nouns

- trousers ➔ jeans, tights, clothes and
- (sun)glasses are always plural. They take a plural verb form.
- These trousers are very nice. Not: This trouser is.
- My jeans were cheap.
A Describing clothes


Look at the pictures and describe the clothes.

1. a cheap tie
2. a short skirt
3. a comfortable shoe
4. a casual handbag
5. a large T-shirt
6. an expensive tie
7. small clothes
8. a loose skirt

Circle the correct word.

- My handbag is very large/small, so I put lots in it.
- I like these trainers, but they’re very comfortable/uncomfortable.
- I’ve got some really nice/horrible boots. I wear them a lot.
- At the weekend, I usually wear casual/smart clothes.
- I haven’t got much money, so I don’t wear cheap/expensive clothes.
- He’s only seven years old, so just buy him a small/large T-shirt.
- You need your long/short coat today; it’s really cold.
- If you are going to the gym, it’s better to wear tight/loose clothes.
- That suit is awful/lovely – you must buy it.

Write the opposite of the underlined word.

- You need a large belt. small
- She’s wearing a long coat. short
- Are those boots comfortable? uncomfortable
- We can wear smart clothes.

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the adjectives and clothes in the pictures.
## B Talking about size 📌

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>Problems with size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What size are you?</td>
<td>I'm a (size) 12.</td>
<td>It's the wrong size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What size do you take?</td>
<td>I take size 40.</td>
<td>It doesn't fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>small/medium/large</td>
<td>They don't fit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complete the sentences.

1. What size _______ are you?
   ~ I'm __________ 14.
2. Is she small, _________, or large?
3. I'm sorry, this shirt is the _________ size.
4. Does this jumper _________?
   ~ No, it's __________ tight for me.
5. What size do you _________?
   ~ Small.
6. I like the trousers but they don't _________;
   they're __________ long.

### Look at the pictures. What's the problem?

1. The jacket is too short.
2. The trousers are too long.
3. The hat is too big.

---

**spotlight too and very**

There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.

- Her coat is **very** long. (It's OK.)
- Her coat is **too** long. (It's not OK.)

These trousers are **very** tight, but I'm going to buy them.

These boots are **too** tight; I can't wear them.
In a shop

A shop assistant (SA) and a customer (C) are talking.

SA  Do you need any help?
C  Yes, I'm looking for a smart, black skirt.
SA  What size do you take?
C  I'm a size 12.

SA  Oh, this is lovely. Can I try it on?
C  Yes, sure. The changing room is over there.
C  Oh, no, it's too tight.
SA  Here's a size 14.

SA  That looks really nice.
C  Thanks, yes, it's fine. I think I'll take it.
SA  Where do I pay?
C  The cash desk is at the front.
SA  How would you like to pay?
C  By credit card.
SA  That's fine. Thank you.

7 Write the words in correct sentences.

► help / can / I / you / ? Can I help you?  
1 I / where / pay / do / ? Where do I pay?
2 thanks / no / I'll / it / leave .
3 changing / where's / excuse me / the / room / ?
4 dress / can / on / this / try / ?
5 pair / I'm / of / looking / trousers / for / a .
6 help / you / need / do / any / ?

8 Write the final word in each sentence.

► What size do you take?  
1 Can I try these?  
2 Pay at the cash.  
3 I like these. I'll take.  
4 I'd like to pay by credit.

5 Excuse me. Where's the changing?  
6 Do you need any?  
7 Oh, that looks. You must buy it.
8 How would you like to?

9 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Do you like shopping for clothes?  
2 How often do you buy clothes?  
3 What was the last thing you bought?  
4 Do you always know what you're looking for?  
5 Do you always try clothes on?  
6 How do you usually pay?
20 I can talk about money

A Money in shops

You are in a shop and decide to buy three CDs. They cost £9 each, which is €27 altogether. You can pay in cash, notes, and coins: for example, you give the shop assistant £30, and he gives you £3 change. You can also pay by debit card or cheque. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to enter (or put in) your PIN. You can also pay by credit card. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to enter (or put in) your PIN. At the end of the transaction, he gives you your CDs and a receipt.

Correct the mistakes.

1. Can I pay by cheque? Can I pay by cheque?
2. The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty cents.
3. Could you put your PIN, please?
4. She paid for the dress of cash.
5. I've only got a 50 pounds note.
6. They're £6 for each.
7. Have you got a bank account?
8. Three books. That's £42 together.
9. The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 money.

Complete the dialogues.

A. I'd like this watch, please.
B. Fine. How would you like to pay?
   A. By debit card.
B. Thanks. Could you (1) your (2) please?
   A. Thank you. Here's your watch and your (3) .
B. Thank you.

C. Hi. How much do these peaches (4) ?
D. They're 50 cents (5) .
C. I'll have six, please, and a melon.
D. Thank you. That's £4.30 (6) .
C. I'm sorry, I've only got a £50 (7) .
D. That's OK. I've got lots of (8) .
B Money in adverts

Sell your car on esellers.com!
Photo printer half price.
Normal price: €120, now €60.
Spend €50 on Italian wine and get a free pizza.
Fly to Dublin, fares from €16.
Pay your gas bill online and save 5%.
Earn £30 an hour in your own home. Ring 0990 557731.
Play the Lottery and win £1,000,000!

3. Circle the correct answer.
   1. I bought this table online free.
   2. What's the price/bill of these shoes?
   3. I bought ten bottles and earned/saved €3.
   4. I won/earned £100 in the lottery.

4. Test yourself. Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.
   ➤ pay paid 3 sell 6 saved
   1 buy 4 earn
   2 spend 5 win

5. Complete the questions with a word from the box.
   (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

   How much do you spend on food every week?
   1. Do you ever shop expensive?
   2. Is your phone expensive?
   3. Is water expensive in restaurants?
   4. What's the of a litre of milk?
   5. Are train cheap?
   6. Do women more than men?

Glossary
sell & sold give something to someone who pays you money for it; buy or bought price the money you have to pay for something; If something is half price, you pay 50%.
spend money on something & spent pay money for something free If something is free, you don't pay for it.
bill a piece of paper which shows how much you need to pay online on the internet
save If you save 5% on a bill, you pay 95% of the bill.
fare the money you pay to go by plane, train, etc.
earn get money for the work you do
lottery a game where you buy tickets and can win money
win or won get money etc. in a game

Everyday Life 55
## 21 I can talk about the weather

### A What’s the weather like? 🌩️

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>It's sunny.</td>
<td>The sun's shining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloudy</td>
<td>It's cloudy.</td>
<td>Its raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wet</td>
<td>It's wet.</td>
<td>It's raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windy</td>
<td>It's windy.</td>
<td>The wind's blowing. or blew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icy</td>
<td>It's icy.</td>
<td>Its icy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foggy</td>
<td>It's foggy.</td>
<td>Its snowing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snowy</td>
<td>It's snowy.</td>
<td>Its snowing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Match 1 – 9 with a – j.
   - It's ___
   - It __________
   - The wind ______
   - It isn’t ______
   - The sun ______
   - Is ______
   - There’s a bit ______
   - There’s a lot of ______
   - It doesn’t ______
   - What’s ______

   - a of cloud today.
   - b it foggy outside?
   - c isn’t raining.
   - d cold this morning.
   - e snow on the roads.
   - f rain a lot here.
   - g the weather like?
   - h very windy.
   - i blew my hat off.
   - j is shining.

2. Rewrite the sentences using the correct word.
   - There was a lot of ice. It was very __________.
   - It isn’t raining. There’s no __________.
   - Is the sun shining? Is it __________?
   - We often have snow. It often __________.
   - She doesn’t like fog. She doesn’t like __________ weather.
   - It was very windy on Friday. There was a lot of __________ on Friday.
   - There are no clouds. It isn’t __________.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and look at the pictures. What’s the weather like?
B Wet and dry weather

Glossary
changeable changing a lot
pleasant nice
dry airy wet
shower a short period of rain
hot or cold
humid warm, wet and uncomfortable
storm see picture
breeze a light, pleasant wind
cool not hot or warm, but pleasant
heavy rain a lot of rain
thunder the loud noise of a storm
lightning see picture
freezing very, very cold
damp cold and a bit wet

In my country, the weather in spring is very changeable. It can be pleasant and dry, but we often have showers. It can get hot in the summer for two or three months, and in the cities it is often humid, especially before a storm. It’s cooler on the coast, where there is usually a sea breeze. In autumn, we get some heavy rain, perhaps with thunder and lightning. In winter, it can be dry, sunny and freezing, or grey and damp.

4 Circle the correct word.
- Humid weather is very pleasant/uncomfortable.
1. There was a bit of sunshine between the showers/lightning.
2. Do you like watching the lightning/thunder when it’s stormy?
3. The air in the Sahara Desert is dry/humid, and it’s very hot/cold at midday.
4. Showers usually last a few hours/minutes.
5. In cold, wet weather, your clothes feel damp/humid.
6. By the sea you get a nice breeze/wind.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.
- It’s wet outside. (rain) It’s raining outside.
1. It rained a lot last night. (heavy) There was _____________________
2. It was warm and damp yesterday. (humid) It _____________________
3. There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. (shower) There _____________________
4. The weather changes a lot. (changeable) The weather _____________________
5. It isn’t wet today. (dry) It _____________________
6. We had heavy rain and thunder. (storm) We had _____________________

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Make the sentences true for your country.
- We often have storms in July. We never have storms in July.
1. We have a lot of showers in the spring. _____________________
2. In winter it’s always freezing at night. _____________________
3. The weather is always the same in the summer. _____________________
4. We sometimes have heavy rain for 24 hours. _____________________
5. It often snows in the winter. _____________________
6. Our winters are usually dry. _____________________
7. We often have thunder and lightning. _____________________
8. It is usually hot and dry in summer. _____________________
22 I can talk about illness  Do Unit 12 first

A Common problems

What's the matter?
I don't feel well.
I've got...

a headache toothache stomach-ache a cold a cough a sore throat

flu a temperature a pain in my leg also my leg hurts backache I feel sick

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 I'm/He/She/We/They've got a temperature.
2 I've got a cold.
3 He/She/We/They hasn't got well.
4 He/She/We/They've got toothache.
5 Do you feel/Am I sick?
6 My knee feels hurts.
7 He's got flu/a flu?
8 Is/Has he got a temperature?
9 I hurt/ve got a pain in my eye.
10 Is/Has he got a temperature?
11 She is/He's got a sore throat.
12 I don't feel/haven't got a cough.

2 Complete the sentences.

1 I had to stand up for ten hours; now I've got backache__________.
2 She has always smoked a lot, and now she's got a bad ____________.
3 He's got a ____________—look, it's 39 degrees.
4 I walked 20 kilometres today, and now my feet.
5 What's the ____________? You look terrible. — I don't feel ____________.
6 I ate too much at lunch and now I've got ____________.
7 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels ____________.
8 I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got ____________.
9 I can't eat anything; I've got a sore ____________.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

[Spotlight] be ill/sick
ill means 'not well'.
It's not here today; he's ill.
Be sick usually means to bring up food from your stomach (also vomit).
If you feel sick, you think you are going to be sick.
What should I do?

I don't feel very well. I've got a temperature.

You should go and see your GP.
You should go to the chemist’s.
You should stay in bed for a day or two.
You should go and lie down for a while.

Glossary

go and see go to, visit
GP (General Practitioner) family doctor
chemist’s shop where you get medicine (also pharmacy)
lie down

for a while for a short time
stay in bed go to bed and not get up
for a day or two for a short time (not more than three days)

4 Cross out one word you don’t need in each sentence.
I don't feel me very well.
1 You should to go to the chemist’s.
2 Go and lie you down for a while.
3 Go and see your GP doctor.
4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.

5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
6 You should go and see your doctor.
7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
8 Lie down for the a while.

5 Write some advice to people using should and the word in brackets.
I've got a cold. (chemist’s) You should go to the chemist’s.
1 I've got backache. (lie)
2 My ear hurts. (pharmacy)
3 I've got a sore throat, a cough and a temperature. (stay)
4 I feel sick. (while)
5 I've got flu. (GP)
23 I can get help at the chemist's  Do Unit 22 first

In a chemist's shop, a chemist (Ch) is talking to a customer (C).

Ch Can I help you?
C Yes, I cut my finger yesterday, and it really hurts.
Ch You need some antiseptic cream for it.
C Right. Could I have some plasters and some cotton wool, please?
Ch Yes, of course. That's €5.60, please.

Ch Yes?
C Er, I need something for a cold.
Ch Right, well, try these tablets—they're very good.
C OK, and how often do I take them?
Ch Take two tablets every four hours with water.
C Thanks. And I'd like a box of tissues, please, and some cough medicine.

Glossary
need If you need something, it's necessary or important for you to have it.
antiseptic You put antiseptic cream on a cut to clean it.
take a tablet eat a tablet (also take medicine)

1 Correct the spelling. Be careful: one is correct.

1 chemist chemist 2 something ________________ 3 coton wool ______ 4 antiseptic ______

2 tissus ______ 5 plastres ______ 6 farmaci ______ 7 creme ________ 8 medicina ______

2 Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.

for toothache, please take these tablets wool this medicine— it's very good cream
tablet three times a day help you a sore throat some plasters, please for your finger a box of

Customer
I'd like a box of tissues, please.
1 Have you got something for ____________? 7 Try ____________.
2 How often do I _______________? 8 Take one ____________.
3 I need something _______________. 9 Do you need antiseptic _______________?
4 I need some cotton _______________. 10 Can I _________________?
5 Could I have _______________

Chemist
6 You need some plasters _____________.

3 Test yourself. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and say the words.
Review: Everyday Life

Unit 17

1 Put the preposition in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.
   ▶ We often go on Saturday night. (out) We often go out on Saturday night.
   1 We sometimes go a walk after lunch. (for) ______________________________
   2 Do you usually play tennis the weekend? (at) ____________________________
   3 I usually go the gym, and then I go home. (to) __________________________
   4 She listens music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping. (to) ________
   5 On Sundays I often stay and watch TV. (in) _____________________________
   6 I talk my parents every evening. (to) _________________________________
   7 My sister occasionally comes and we have dinner together. (round) ________
   8 What time do you get work in the morning? (to) _________________________

2 Complete Jana's daily routine below using phrases a – k.
   a the shopping  
   b breakfast together  
   c up at 6.30 a.m  
   d to work at about 9.30  
   e a shave  
   f work at 6.00 p.m. and go home

   My husband, Marco, and I have the same routine every day. I usually get ___ and have
   (1) ____. I get dressed (2) _____, and Marco always has a shower and (3) _____. We have
   (4) ______, then Marco and I leave (5) _____. I go to the town centre and do (6) _____ on
   my way to work. I get (7) _____. I finish (8) ______. We have (9) ______, and I go (10) ________.

Unit 18

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

   tie  watch  hat  socks  T-shirt  belt  jumper  tights  sandals  gloves  boots

   ▶ You wear them on your feet in summer. sandals
   1 You wear them inside your shoes. ________  6 You wear it round your neck. ________
   2 You wear it on your head. ________  7 You wear it over a shirt. ________
   3 You wear them on your hands. ________  8 You wear them over your legs and feet. ________
   4 You wear them on your feet. ________  9 You can wear it under a shirt. ________
   5 You wear it on your wrist. ________  10 You wear it round your waist. ________
2 Label the colours.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  

3 Write a, some or a pair of.

► a hat 2 jeans 6 jacket
► some jumpers 3 ties 7 trainers
► a pair of gloves 4 trousers 8 sandals
► a scarf 5 shirts

Unit 19

1 Complete the puzzle. Answer 1 – 16. Follow the arrows.

► Opposite of comfortable.
1 OK, I’ll ______ it.
2 Opposite of tight.
3 Opposite of expensive.
4 What ______ are you? I’m a 14.
5 Can I ______ it on?
6 The ______ room is over there.
7 I’d like to ______ in cash.
8 Synonym for awful.
9 The place you pay in a shop is the ______
10 Small, ______ or large?
11 Can I ______ you?
12 It’s the ______ size. It’s too small.
13 Opposite of smart.
14 A person who works in a shop is a shop ______
15 No, thanks, I’ll ______ it. It’s too expensive.
16 Do you ______ any help?
2 Complete the conversation between the shop assistant (SA) and the customer (C).

SA  Hello, do you need any help?
C  Yes, I'm (1) ________ for some brown trousers.
SA  Right. What size do you (2) ________?
C  Oh, size 10, I think.
SA  OK, well, how about these?
C  Oh, yes, they're very (3) ________. Where can I try them (4) ________?
SA  The changing (5) ________ is over there.

Later ...
SA  Hmm, they (6) ________ really nice.
C  Yes, but they're (7) ________ small. Can I try on a (8) ________ 12, please?

Later ...
C  They're (9) ________ I'll take (10) ________. Where do I (11) ________?
SA  At the (12) ________ desk.

Unit 20

1 True or false? Write T or F.
   ▶  You pay a receipt.  F
   1 You can pay by cheque or bill.  ______
   2 You can use a credit card to pay for things you buy online.  ______
   3 If you pay in cash, you use notes and coins.  ______
   4 If you buy three things for €60 altogether, they cost €180 each.  ______
   5 If you use a credit card in a shop, they usually ask you to enter a PIN.  ______
   6 If you win a car, you don't have to pay for it. It's free.  ______

2 Complete the text.

Last year, I (1) ________ €10,000 on the lottery. I was so excited! The first day, I went out and sold my old car and bought (2) ________ a new one. It only costs (3) ________ €3000 because it was half price (4) ________, and I also saved (5) ________ another 5% because I paid (6) ________ cash.

The next day, I gave my brother some money. He doesn't earn (9) ________, so I paid (10) ________ his electricity and phone bill (11) ________ for him, and then I gave him the plane ticket (12) ________ to Lisbon so that he could go and see his girlfriend. And I've still got some money in the bank.

Unit 21

1 Write a lot, a lot of, a bit, or a bit of.
   ▶  It rained (a lot) yesterday – I couldn't go out.
   1 It's (a bit) wet today.
   2 There was (a lot of) fog this morning. I couldn't see where I was driving.
   3 It snows (a lot) in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centimetres a day.
   4 There's (a bit) rain, but it's not much. You don't need your umbrella.
   5 It snowed (a lot) last night – only two centimetres.
   6 We had (a bit of) sun yesterday – from morning to evening. It was lovely.
2. Complete the crossword.

Across
2. The wind ______ more in autumn.
5. Noun from icy.
8. Warm and damp weather feels ______
9. You need good ______ for skiing.
11. Very cold.
12. It rained a lot—we had ______ rain.
13. Opposite of wet.

Down
1. We had a ______ of rain.
3. Heavy rain with black clouds and wind.
4. Adjective from wind.
6. Rain for a short time.
7. The noise you hear in storms.
10. The sun ______ more in summer.
11. Adjective from fog.

Unit 22

Find the illness words in the square. Write them in 1 – 9.

T M X E A R Z H O S
B A C K A C H E J O
Q S O I D O Y A M R
R I F L U L Y D Z E
U C J A H D E A K T
I K W E S B I C R H
T O O T A H C E R
A S V E C E G E L O
F H U R T S D E M A
R S K E V W E L L T

► I’ve got a ______
1. I’ve got a ______
2. I’ve got a ______
3. I’ve got ______
4. I’ve got ______
5. I’ve got ______
6. I feel ______
7. I don’t feel ______
8. My arm ______
9. I’ve got a pain in my ______

Unit 23

Complete the conversation between the Chemist (Ch) and customer (C).

Ch. Good morning, can I help ______ you?
C. I need (1) ______ for a sore throat.
Ch. Right. (2) ______ these (3) ______—they’re excellent.
C. OK, how (4) ______ do I (5) ______ them?
Ch. (6) ______ one now, and then every two hours.
C. OK, and (7) ______ I have a (8) ______ of tissues, and some cough (9) ______, please?
Ch. Yes, of course.
1. Which one is different? Why?
   - cow sheep salmon pig
   - lamb pork beef tuna
   - salmon because it’s a fish

2. Complete the names of meat, fish or seafood.
   - lamb 1. ____________ 2. ____________ 3. ____________ 4. ____________ 5. ____________

3. Write the word for the meat or fish.
   - beef
   - 1. ____________
   - 2. ____________
   - 3. ____________
   - 4. ____________
   - 5. ____________

4. ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
   - Do you like:
     - 1. bacon? ____________
     - 2. beef? ____________
     - 3. squid? ____________
     - 4. mussels? ____________
     - 5. crab? ____________
     - 6. tuna? ____________
     - 7. prawns? ____________
     - 8. duck? ____________
     - 9. lamb? ____________

5. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.
25 I can name fruit and vegetables

A Fruit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td>This juice tastes of orange and lemon.</td>
<td>It's like orange and lemon when you drink it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>Strawberries are very sweet.</td>
<td>Tasting of sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitter</td>
<td>Lemons are very bitter.</td>
<td>Very sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>I eat a lot of fresh fruit.</td>
<td>Not old and not from a tin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Find the end of each word.

banana / grapes / melon / lemon / avocado / strawberry / cherry / pineapple / pear / orange / peach / apple

2. Answer the questions.
   - Are strawberries red or green? red
   - Are peaches sweet or bitter? __________
   - Are lemons sweet or bitter? __________
   - Are cherries red or green? __________
   - Are avocados red or green? __________
   - Are grapes big or small? __________
   - Is fresh fruit good or bad? __________
   - Do mangoes taste sweet or bitter? __________
   - Are melons big or small? __________

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

Use the cover card to test yourself. Write down new words in a notebook.
**B Vegetables**

- potato
- beans
- onion
- carrot
- cauliflower
- cabbage
- peas
- aubergine
- courgette
- mushroom
- garlic (clove)
- chilli
- lettuce
- tomato
- cucumber
- red and green pepper
- raw
- frozen
- cooked

**Spotlight: Salad**

A salad can have different raw vegetables in it. It usually has lettuce, and often has tomatoes and cucumber. Red pepper, carrots or onion are also possible. A salad is often part of a meal.

**4 Make the names of vegetables from the letters.**

- sepe (pea)
- ractor (carrot)
- nonio (onion)
- prepe (pep)
- gacabe (bean)
- naseb (bean)
- routgeget (cauliflower)

**5 True or false? Write T or F.**

- Carrots are small and round. F
- People often eat raw potatoes. F
- Chillies make your mouth hot. T
- Lettuce is often frozen. F
- Peas are often frozen. T
- You often have tomatoes in a salad. T
- Salad is often cooked. T

**6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.**

Do you eat these things in your country? Answer "Yes, a lot," "Yes," "Yes, but not much," or "No, we don't."

- raw cabbage
- garlic
- cherries
- frozen carrots
- mushrooms
- aubergine
- cucumber
- avocado
- mangoes
- fresh pineapple
- lettuce
- courgette

**7 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**

**FOOD AND DRINK 67**
26 I can buy food in a shop

A Food

milk □ bread □ butter □ a piece of cheese □ eggs □ sugar □

a cake □ jam □ biscuits □ olive oil □ rice □ pasta □

olives □ noodles □ a bar of chocolate □

spotlight Uncountable nouns

The nouns with □ are usually uncountable:

butter or some butter or a butter/butters

This bread is nice. Not These breads are nice.

We can make uncountable nouns countable:

a piece of cheese a bar of chocolate

1 Tick (✓) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong.

► some oil ✓

► a milk □ milk/milk/milk

1 biscuits

2 a piece of cheese

3 a butter

4 cakes

5 a cheese

6 some sugar

7 eggs

8 a bread

9 pasta

10 rices

11 a jam

12 olives

2 Complete the words.

► br □ r□

1 m□

2 some ch □

3 sug □

4 bis □

5 some olive □

6 six e □

7 but □

8 ri □

9 a large bar of

10 noo □

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
B Containers and quantities

A carton of juice
A packet of rice and a packet of biscuits
A jar of jam and a jar of olives
A tin of tomatoes
A can of soda
A bottle of wine
A box of chocolates and a box of matches

100 grams
200 grams
Half a kilo
A kilo
Half a litre
A litre

Study the pictures for 30 seconds. Cover the pictures. True or false? Write T or F.

1. There’s a jar of jam. ______
2. There’s a box of chocolates. ______
3. There’s a bottle of water. ______
4. There’s a packet of sugar. ______
5. There’s a can of cola. ______
6. There’s a box of matches. ______
7. There’s a carton of milk. ______
8. There’s a jar of olives. ______
9. There’s a tin of peas. ______
10. There’s a packet of rice. ______

Complete the phrases with a suitable word.

1. Can you buy a ______ of rice at the shops, please?
2. I bought my sister a lovely ______ of chocolates.
3. Can I have a ______ of strawberry jam, please?
4. We need a ______ of olive oil.
5. There’s a ______ of orange juice in the fridge.
6. For four people, we’ll need a ______ of chicken.
7. Can I open this ______ of chocolate biscuits?
8. I’d like 200 ______ of ham, please.
9. He drinks half a ______ of milk for breakfast.
10. I went out and bought a ______ of wine.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
C Buying food

Shop assistant (SA) Customer (C)

C Could I have a kilo of onions, please?
SA Right.
C And have you got any peaches?
SA Yes, How many would you like?
C I’d like (our, please, Are they ripe?)
SA Yes, they’re lovely. Anything else?
C No, that’s all, thanks.

C I’d like some cheese, please.
SA Sure. What would you like?
C Oh, that Brie looks nice.
SA Yes, it is, How much would you like?
C About 200 grams.
SA Right. This piece is just over.
C That’s fine.
SA OK. Anything else?
C No, that’s it, thanks.

7 Complete the dialogues.

A Yes?
B I’d like __________ six pears, please.
1 A Have you ___________ any apples?
B Yes. How ___________ would you like?
2 A I’d like some ham, please.
B How ___________?
A Oh, about 200 grams.
B Of course. Anything ___________?
A No, ___________ it, thanks.
3 A ___________ I have half a kilo of onions?
B Sure. That’s ___________ under half.
A Yeah, that’s fine.
4 A I’d like ___________ a melon, but
these don’t look ___________.
B No, they need two or three more days.
A OK.

Glossary

Could I have ...? This is another polite way to say ‘I want’.
Have you got any ...? = Do you have any...?
ripe If something is ripe, you can eat it now.
that’s it or that’s all = I don’t want any more things.
I’d like = I would like (This is a polite way to say ‘I want’.)
just over a little more than or just under
Anything else? = Do you want any more things?

Spotlight how much and how many

We use how much with uncountable nouns and how many with countable nouns:
How much butter do you want?
How many apples do we need?

8 Make sentences from the words.

twelve / have / could / please / eggs / ? ___________
please / some / like / I’d / sugar ___________
got / ham / you / any / have / ? ___________
much / would / cheese / how / like / you / ? ___________
that’s / kilo / just / half / a / over ___________
oranges / many / like / would / how / you / ? ___________

70 FOOD AND DRINK
27 I can order in a café  

Do Unit 26 first

1. (white) coffee
2. black coffee
3. cappuccino
4. espresso
5. tea (with milk)
6. hot chocolate
7. orange juice
8. baguette
9. sandwich (white bread)
10. sandwich (brown bread)
11. toasted sandwich
12. roll

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C) in a café.

W: Yes, please?
C: I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.
W: Is that to eat here or take away?
C: To eat here.
W: OK. Anything else?
C: Yes, two coffees, please, and a cappuccino.
W: OK. The food will be a couple of minutes. Have a seat.

Find the end of each word.
1. You can have a baguette sandwich toasted sandwich.
2. You can have a cappuccino tea orange juice espresso black coffee.

Complete the phrases.
► a ham _____ 4 black _______ 8 black or _______ coffee?
1. brown _______ 5 eat here or _______ _______ _______ _______.
2. a toasted _______ 6 a _______ of minutes
3. hot _______ 7 brown or _______ bread?

Add one word to each line of the conversation.

W: Please?
C: I like two coffees please.
W: To drink here or away?
C: To drink here. And a toasted ham.
W: OK. It will be a couple of minutes. Have a seat, please.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

FOOD AND DRINK  71
A The table

1 glass of red wine  4 oil  7 napkin  11 knife
2 salt and (black)  5 vinegar  8 bowl  12 spoon
pepper  6 glass of white  9 plate
wine  10 fork

1 Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a (1) f ... k, and (2) s ... n, and a (3) n ... n for their hands and face. They each have a white (4) p ... e and a (5) b ... l. To drink, there’s a (6) b ... e of (7) m ... . I w ... t, and two (8) g ... s of (9) w ... e: one (10) r ... d and the other (11) w ... e. There is also some (12) s ... t and (13) b ... k p ... r, and little (14) b ... s of (15) o ... l and (16) v ... r.

2 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about 1 – 12 in the picture and complete the sentences.

On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have ____________________________ ____________.

We don’t usually have ____________________________ ____________.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

B What shall we have?

boiled rice  fried eggs  grilled fish  roast chicken

Steak can be: rare  medium  well done
**MENU**

**Starters**
- Tomato soup
- Grilled prawns in soy sauce
- Mussels in white wine and garlic

**Main courses**
- Pan fried tuna with green beans
- Fillet steak with chips and mushrooms
- Roast duck with cabbage and peas
- Grilled chicken with boiled potatoes
- Cheese tart with mixed salad

**Desserts**
- Apple tart
- Ice cream with chocolate sauce

4. True or false? Write T or F.
   1. You eat the starter after the main course. F
   2. You eat ice cream with a knife and fork. ___
   3. Mixed salad can have lettuce and tomato in. ___
   4. You eat soup and chips in the same bowl. ___
   5. The list of food to eat is called a menu. ___
   6. Dessert is the first thing you eat. ___
   7. You can roast a chicken or a duck. ___
   8. You can boil rice or potatoes. ___
   9. Fillet steak comes from a pig. ___
   10. You can have cheese tart or apple tart. ___

5. Complete the sentences.
   1. I'd like roast chicken. ___
   2. I love ice cream. ___
   3. Could I have fillet steak? ___
   4. I'd like a mixed salad. ___
   5. What's your main course? ___
   6. Pass me the soy sauce. ___
   7. Do you like your steak well done? ___
   8. I had chicken with boiled rice. ___

6. ABOUT YOU Look at the menu. Write your answers or ask another student.
   - Which starter would you like? ____________
   - Which main course would you like? ____________
   - Which dessert would you like? ____________

7. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
C. Customer and waiter

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C).
W. Are you ready to order?
C. Yes, I’ll have the filet steak.
W. And how would you like your steak?
C. Rare, please. And I’d like a glass of red wine, and some mineral water.
W. Still or sparkling?
C. Sparkling.
W. Fine.

Later in the meal ...
C. Could I have another glass of wine?
W. Yes, of course.
C. Oh, and some more water, please.
W. Certainly.

W. Would you like to see the dessert menu?
C. No thanks, but I’ll have a coffee. And could I have the bill, please?
W. Yes, sure.

8. Circle the correct word.

I’d like to have coffee.
1. Could I have some more/an other potatoes?
2. Are you ready order/to order?
3. Do you want another/some more bottle?
4. We had a delicious meal/food last night.
5. Yes, course/ of course.
6. Could I have the bill, please?
7. I’ll have the prawns, please.
8. Yes, certainly/certain.

9. Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1
W. Are you ready to order?
C. Yes, I’ll (1) the steak.
W. And (2) would you like it?
C. Rare, please. And a bottle of mineral water.
W. Yes, of (3) . Still or (4) ?
C. Still, please.
Conversation 2
C. Could I have (5) more water, please?
W. Certainly. And would you like a (6) ?
C. Yes, I (7) have the ice cream. Then could I have the (8) ?
W. Yes, (9) .

Glossary

Are you ready to order? = Do you know what you want to eat?
I’ll have steak = I’d like steak, as I want steak.
How would you like your steak? = Would you like your steak rare, medium or well done?
still water = water without gas
sparkling water = water with gas
meal = Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals.
course = These phrases all mean “Yes, no problem.”
the bill = a piece of paper which shows the money you must pay for the meal

Say another (= one more) with countable nouns, e.g. another glass/biscuit/apple.
Say some more with uncountable nouns, e.g. some more water/wine/bread.
Review: Food and drink

Unit 24

Put the words in the correct column. Some words go in two columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Meet</th>
<th>Fish</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Unit 25)

1 Write three examples of a fruit or vegetable for each colour.

- red: red pepper
- yellow: [example]
- orange: [example]
- white/cream: [example]
- green: [example]

2 Find four more adjectives, five fruits, and five vegetables in the word square.

```
TAEL FRESH
MUSHROOM C
ABIPOTATO
NERIPEMBO
GRAPESEKE
OGWUNALE
TIRLEMOND
ONIONANSE
PEARSWEET
```
Unit 26

1. Put these foods and drinks into the correct column below. Some words can go into more than one column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Packet</th>
<th>Carton</th>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Bottle</th>
<th>Jar</th>
<th>Tin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>orange juice</td>
<td>matches</td>
<td>water</td>
<td>butter</td>
<td>olive oil</td>
<td>pasta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomatoes</td>
<td>wine</td>
<td>rice</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>olives</td>
<td>chocolates</td>
<td>biscuits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tuna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete six more phrases or sentences you say or hear in a shop. Use words from the circle. You can use the same word more than once.

- Yes, we have.__________________________
- Could ________________________________
- I'd _________________________________
- Have ________________________________
- Anything _____________________________
- That's ______________________________
- How ________________________________

Unit 27

Write the words in the correct order in the dialogue between a waiter (W) and a customer (C).

- W please / yes / ? _________________
- C sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / I'd _________________
- W that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / ? _________________
- C away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take _________________
- W else / fine / anything / ? _________________
- C coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas _________________
- W be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple _________________
- W seat / a / have _________________
Unit 28

1 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ Three meals in the day: breakfast, lunch and ____________.
   1 Three things you eat with: knife, ____________, and ____________.
   2 Three parts in a meal: starter, ____________, and ____________.
   3 Three ways to cook food: grilled, ____________, and ____________.
   4 Three ways to cook steak: rare, ____________, and ____________.
   5 Two things you find on a restaurant table: salt and ____________.
   6 Two things you put on salad: oil and ____________.
   7 Two things people drink: red wine and ____________ wine.
   8 Two types of mineral water: still and ____________.

2 A waiter (W) and a customer (C) are having a conversation. A word is missing in each line. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.
   ▶ C Could I see the ____________? menu.
   1 W Are you ready to ____________?
      C Yes, I have the tomato soup. ____________
      W Right. And for your course? ____________
      C Fillet with chips. ____________
   2 W Do you want red wine or wine? ____________
      C Red, please. ____________
      W OK. Is that a or just a glass? ____________
   3 At the end of the ____________.
      C Could I have the, please? ____________
      W Yes, of ____________.

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.

Test yourself, using the cover card.
29 I can get around on buses

Bus routes 24 and 16

![Bus route map]

**Timetable** Monday to Saturday
Bus 24 every 10 minutes
Bus 16 every 12 minutes
2 minutes from stop to stop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Excuse me</strong>, which bus do I get to the park?</td>
<td>The 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 24 go to the railway station?</td>
<td>No, it doesn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 24 stop near the bank?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 16 stop outside the park?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often does the 16 run?</td>
<td>Every 12 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many stops is it to the park?</td>
<td>Three.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which is the last stop for the 24?</td>
<td>The bus station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do I get off for the cinema?</td>
<td>At the next stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long does it take to the bus station?</td>
<td>It takes about ten minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**

- excuse me: We say excuse me when we start talking to someone we don’t know.
- get a bus, train, etc.: travel on a bus, train, etc. (also take)
- go travel
- near
- outside
- run: travel on a route (bus, train)
- every: (12 minutes) e.g. at 1.00, 1.12, 1.24, etc.
- (bus) stop: the place where you get on or off a bus
- last stop: the bus stop at the end of the route
- get off: leave the bus (or get on)
- next stop: the first stop after now

**Spotlight**

**How long does it take?**

- How long? = How much time?
- How long does it take (to get) to the station?
- ~ It takes about 10 minutes.
- ~ It doesn’t take long. = It takes a short time.
1 Write the words in the correct order to make questions.
   - near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the / ? Does the 24 stop near the bank?
   - stop / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the / ?
   - school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / I / to / do / the / ?
   - take / long / how / does / to / railway station / it / the / ?
   - post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the / ?
   - off / do / get / I / where / cinema / for / the / ?
   - park / the 24 / does / to / go / the / ?
   - often / run / does / the 24 / how / ?
   - which / stop / last / is / for / the 16 / the / ?

2 Answer the questions in Exercise 1, using the bus information on page 78. Remember, you are at the museum.
   - Yes, it does.
   - 5          stop.
   - 6          .
   - 7          minutes.
   - 8          .

3 Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 78.
   There are two bus lines: the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first step is the museum, and the second stop is the cinema; the third stop is the bus station, where everybody has to get on the bus. The 16 starts at the museum too, but it goes to the railway station. The sixth bus (8) tells you how often the buses (7) . The 24 bus (8) (9) ten minutes. It (10) two minutes to get from the school to the park.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
   1 Is there a bus stop near your house? If yes, where is it exactly?
   2 Which buses stop there?
   3 How often do they run?
   4 Do you often get the bus? If yes, where to?
   5 How many stops is it?
   6 How long does it take?

5 Test yourself. Cover the answers on page 78 and look at the questions and the bus route. Can you answer the questions?

Practice the questions using the CD-ROM.
30 I can get around on trains  Do Unit 29 first

A Train vocabulary

Glossary
get/take a train  travel by train
the 12 o'clock train  the train that leaves at 12:00
journey  when you travel from A to B
ticket  money you pay to travel
a fast train  a train that is very fast
(railway) station  a place where trains stop and
people get on and off

spotlight  last
Last has different meanings:
1. final  The last train leaves at 11:30 p.m.
2. most recent  My last train journey was two weeks ago.

1 Answer the questions.
- What's another verb for get a train? ___take a train___
1. What's the opposite of a fast train? ________
2. What's the opposite of get on the train? ________
3. What's the opposite of miss a train? ________
4. What's another way of saying the train that leaves at 7? ________
5. What do you sit on in a train? ________
6. Where do you catch a train? ________

2 Complete the sentences.
- We can get the 7:45 ___train_____.
1. How much was the train ________?
2. Our seats are in the second ________.
3. Sorry I'm late, I ________ the train to Zug.
4. We can ________ a train.
5. The ________ train is at 12:00 p.m.
6. We ________ for the train in the café.
7. Have a look at the ________ .
8. I think there's a train to London at 6.15.
8. It's a long ________ from Lisbon to Paris.

80 GETTING AROUND
B  Buying a ticket

It’s now 9.30. A passenger (P) is talking to someone at the ticket office (O) at Bristol Station.

P  A single to Cardiff, please.
O  That’s £3.10, please.
P  Right, and when’s the next train?
O  There’s one at 10.07.
P  Fine. Do I have to change?
O  No, it’s direct.
P  That’s good. And when does it get to Cardiff?
O  10.56.
P  OK. And which platform is it?
O  Platform 6.
P  Right, thanks.

Glossary

passenger  a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, car, etc.
ticket office  the place where you buy tickets in a station
single or single ticket  a ticket for a journey from A to B (A return is a ticket for a journey from A to B, and from B back to A.)
next  The next train is the first one after now.
change trains  get off one train and get on another
direct  A journey is direct if you don’t need to change trains.
get to arrive at or in or leave platform  the part of the station where you get on and off the train

spotlight book something in advance
If you book a seat (in advance), you buy a ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. In a hotel, you can book a room (in advance), and in a restaurant you can book a table.
You can also say reserve a seat or room or table.

3  Complete the questions using words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>direct</th>
<th>London</th>
<th>office</th>
<th>train</th>
<th>is it?</th>
<th>return</th>
<th>advance</th>
<th>seat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which platform is it?</td>
<td>4 When do we get to?</td>
<td>5 Where’s the ticket?</td>
<td>6 When’s the next?</td>
<td>7 Can I reserve a?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can I book in?</td>
<td>2 Do you want a single or?</td>
<td>3 Is the train?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4  Look at the timetable and complete the text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Cheltenham</th>
<th>Kemble</th>
<th>London Paddington</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.35</td>
<td>8.45</td>
<td>08:40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.18</td>
<td>9.18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10.40</td>
<td>10.40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I’m going from Cheltenham to London tomorrow. There isn’t a direct train, so I have to (1) . The train (2) from (3) . It (4) to Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to catch the 9.18, which gets (5) . London Paddington at 10.40. A (6) ticket costs £22, but I can get a return for £40 if I book in (7) .

5  ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1  When was your last train journey? 
2  Where did you go, and why? 
3  What was the fare? 
4  Did you book in advance? 
5  Was it direct, or did you have to change trains? 

GETTING AROUND  81
Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?

Excuse me. Do you know the way to the railway station?

Excuse me. Is there a hotel near here?

**spotlight** *Excuse me...*

It is polite to say *excuse me* to someone you don't know when you ask them a question.

---

**Go straight on. or Just keep going.**

It’s about ten minutes.

**Go along here and turn left.**

The bookshop is **opposite** the Hotel Plaza.

**Turn right** at the café, then **left into** Abbey Road, and the bank is on your **right**.

---

**Go along here and take the second turning on the left.**

**It's the third turning on the right.**

There’s a cinema on the **corner**.

**Thanks very much.**
1 Make sentences from the words.

- turn / and / go / right / here / along
- Go along here and turn right.
- excuse / I / get / do / bank / the / me / how / to /
- I get to the bank here.
- here / left / along / and / turn / go
- Go left and turn right.
- bank / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here /?
- Is there a bank near here?
- the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third
- It's on the third right.
- way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / bank / the / you /?
- Do you know the way to the bank?
- left / Road / into / Foster / turn
- Turn into Foster Road.

2 Complete the phrases.

- Turn left or right.
- Keep straight.
- Take the second.
- Go straight.
- Thanks very much.
- Go along.
- On the.
- Do you know the.
- Excuse me.

3 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.

1 A Excuse me. How do I to the cinema from here?
   B OK. Go on, and it's the second... no, the third on the (4)
   A Thanks very (5)
   B You're welcome.

2 A (1) me. Is there a post office here?
   (2)
   B Yes. Go here and the second on the (6)
   The post office is (7) the bank.
   A (8) very much.
   B That's OK. No problem.

3 A Excuse me. Do you know the (4) to the Bonham Hotel?
   B No, I'm sorry, I don't.
   A OK. Thanks... Excuse me. Do you know the Bonham Hotel?
   C Yes. left (3) Frith Street and the hotel is on the next (4) on your (5)
   A Thanks very much.
   B Not at all.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words on page 82, and look at the maps. Can you remember the directions?
### I can talk about roads and traffic

#### A In town 🏨

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>junction</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>traffic jam</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>main road</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>traffic light(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>traffic light</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>car park</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>road sign</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>pedestrian crossing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>roundabout</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>speed camera</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>petrol station</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>pavement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Circle the correct answer.
   - traffic park light
   - petrol station/jam
   - main sign/road
   - speed light/camera
   - road camera/ sign
   - pedestrian crossing/park
   - car road/park
   - traffic jam/crossing

2. Complete the sentences.
   - You can go – the traffic light ________ is green.
   - Where's the nearest petrol ________ ?
   - We live on a noisy ________ road.
   - Can you read that road ________ ?
   - The car ________ was full, so we parked on the street.
   - Drivers have to stop at a pedestrian ________.
   - Be careful! There are ________ cameras on the main road.
   - At the ________, do we go left, right or straight on?
   - The ________ is always bad between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m.
   - Walk on the ________, not in the road!
   - Drive slowly and turn left at the next ________ .

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
B Out of town

Beth (B) and Marco (M) are talking.

M How far is it from London to Bath?
B It's about 115 miles. That's 185 kilometres.
M And what's the best way to get there?
B Right. Take the M4 motorway from London. At Junction 18, take the A46. It's ten miles from there.
M Thanks. And what's the speed limit on motorways here?
B 70 miles an hour. That's about 110 kilometres an hour.
M OK. And are they very busy?
B Yes, and you get traffic jams in the rush hour – especially when there's an accident.
M But you still use the motorway?
B Yes, because there are three lanes on most motorways in Britain, so it's easy to overtake. Oh, and Marco – remember to drive on the left!

Glossary
- How far is it? = How many kilometres or miles is it?
- take the M4 go on to and travel on the M4
- motorway a large, fast road between towns
- speed limit the fastest speed you are permitted to go
- busy a road has a lot of cars on it. on quiet roads the opposite
- rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work
- accident
- overtake pass another car by going faster
- drive go somewhere in your car

4 Cover the glossary. Write the words for the meanings.

1. The part of the road where cars travel, with white lines. Lane
2. A large, fast road between two towns. Motorway
3. The busy time when people go to work. Rush hour
4. Pass another car by driving faster. Overtake
5. The fastest speed you are permitted to go. Speed limit
6. The opposite of a busy road. Quiet

5 Complete the sentences.

- You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
- It's a very fast road in the rush hour.
- Go into the fast lane when you overtake other cars on the motorway.
- How far is it from Paris to Marseille? – It's 740 kms.
- The best way to get to the airport is to go on the M25. Oh, remember to drive on the left!

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1. How many lanes do motorways have?
2. What's the speed limit on motorways?
3. Do you have speed cameras on roads?
4. Do you drive on the left in your country?
5. When's the rush hour?
### I can understand signs and notices 📣

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sign or notice</th>
<th>Where?</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ladies, gents, toilet</td>
<td>In a bar, restaurant, train, plane, etc.</td>
<td>Go in here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance or way in</td>
<td>In a car park, museum, cinema, etc.</td>
<td>Go out or leave here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit or way out</td>
<td></td>
<td>You can't go in here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no entry</td>
<td></td>
<td>You can't go out here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no exit</td>
<td></td>
<td>You can't go out here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no smoking</td>
<td>In a cinema, restaurant, etc.</td>
<td>You can't smoke here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no parking</td>
<td>In the street, or in front of a garage or entrance</td>
<td>You can't leave your car here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please do not disturb</td>
<td>hotel room door</td>
<td>I'm sleeping, so don't come in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queue here</td>
<td>at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office</td>
<td>Wait in a line here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing to declare</td>
<td>at an airport</td>
<td>You have no tax to pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
<td>in a shop window</td>
<td>period when a shop sells things at a lower price than usual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of order</td>
<td>on a public telephone, drinks machine, etc.</td>
<td>This isn’t working, or it’s broken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please ring for attention</td>
<td>at reception in a hotel, office, etc.</td>
<td>Ring the bell and somebody will come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no vacancies</td>
<td>in the window of a small hotel</td>
<td>The hotel is full.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Match 1 – 9 with a – j.
   - No smoking                3. Please ____________ 6. Please ____________
   1. No parking ________      4. ____________        7. Nothing to ____________
   2. Toilet ___________       5. ____________        8. No vacancies ________
   3. Queue here ________     6. ____________        9. Please ring for attention ________
   4. Out of order ________   7. Entrance ________   10. ____________
   5. Please do not disturb  8. No vacancies ________
   6. Sale ___________        9. Please ring for attention ________
   7. ____________            10. ____________

2. Complete the signs in different ways.
   - No ____________ 3. Please ____________ 6. Please ____________
   1. No ____________ 4. ____________        7. Nothing to ____________
   2. Way ____________ 5. Way ____________

3. Test yourself. Cover the signs and look at the meanings. Say the signs.
Review: Getting around

Unit 29

Correct the mistakes.

- Where do I get out the bus for the park?  Where do I get off the bus for the park?
  1 This bus go to The National Museum?
  2 How many stopping is it to the railway station?
  3 Excuse, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
  4 How long does it make to get to the centre?
  5 Does the 31 stop next the post office?
  6 Does the 9 stop outside from the school?
  7 The which bus do I get to Queen Street?
  8 Do the buses run all ten minutes?
  9 How long time does it take to the centre?
  10 What often do the buses run?

Unit 30

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

1 The part of the station where you get on or get off a train.
2 The opposite of slow.
3 If you get to the station late, you could ______________ your train.
4 Book (a seat).
5 This tells you when the trains arrive and leave.
6 When you travel from one place to another.
7 Part of the train where people sit.
8 A single or return ______________ .
9 Money you pay to travel.

The letters in the grey squares make the word ______________ .
2 Complete the dialogue between the passenger (P) and the assistant (A) about the train journey from Bristol to Manchester. It’s 9.30. The passenger is in Bristol.

P:  Single …………… to Manchester, please.
A:  That’s £40, please.
P:  When’s the (1) ………………………………………?  
A:  9.58.
P:  Is it (2) ……………………………………….?
A:  No, you have to (3) ……………………… at Birmingham.
P:  OK. And when does the Manchester train (4) …………………………?  
A:  At 11.48.
P:  And when does it (5) …………………………… Manchester?
A:  1.23 p.m.
P:  Right, and which (6) …………………………… is that?
A:  Four.

Unit 31

1 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

► Take the second turning (the left).  On ……………………….
1 The bank is on right.  ……………………………
2 How do I get the river?  ……………………………
3 Go along and turn left.  ……………………………
4 Go straight and turn right.  ……………………………
5 Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank?  ……………………………
6 Yes, it’s the corner of this street.  ……………………………

2 Cross out one word in each sentence to make the sentences correct.

► Turn right into the Duke Street.
1 The bank is opposite of the hotel.  
2 Go straight on and keep to going.  
3 Is there a post office near from here?  
4 It’s on the your left.  
5 Turn to left and go straight on.  
6 It’s the third turning on the right side.
Unit 32

1 Tick (✓) true or false.

You put money in a traffic light. ☑
1 A motorway is bigger than a main road. ☑
2 You walk on a pedestrian crossing. ☑
3 You drive your car on the pavement. ☑
4 Road signs tell you what to do. ☑
5 Roads are quiet in the rush hour. ☑
6 You can get a train at a petrol station. ☑
7 If there’s a traffic jam, the roads are busy. ☑
8 Motorways have more than one lane. ☑
9 It’s a good idea to overtake at a junction. ☑
10 Cars drive round a circle at a roundabout. ☑

2 Complete the radio traffic information.

We are getting reports of an accident on the M40 m__________ (1) near Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the s__________ (2) lost control when it was trying to overtake a bus, and hit two other cars. The police are now at the scene of the accident (4), and say the fast lane (5) of the motorway will be closed for at least an hour. This will mean long t__________ during the h__________ (6), and the police are telling drivers to keep away from the motorway if possible and to t__________ (8) a different route into Oxford.

Unit 33

Complete the dialogues.

Do we pay for things here? – I think so. It says ‘queue here’.
1 Can I leave my car here? – No, the sign says __________.
2 Can we go in here? – Yes, that sign says __________.
3 Let’s stay in this hotel. – We can’t. Look, it says __________.
4 Can we clean this bedroom now? – No, it’s says __________.
5 Is everything cheaper here this week? – Yes, look, it says __________ in the window.
6 Can I use that telephone? – No, it says it’s __________.
7 Can we go out here? – No, that sign says __________.
8 Can I have a cigarette? – No. It says __________.
34 I can talk about my country

Glossary
- enormous very big
- 3,000 kilometres long 3,000 kms from one end to the other
- 3,000 metres high 3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is high not tall.)
- capital a city where a country has its government
- inland not near the sea
- major large and important
- famous If something is famous, many people know about it. (Rio is famous for Carnival.)
- beach area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana
- popular If something is popular, many people like it.

Brazil is enormous. The Atlantic coast is more than 3,000 kilometres long, and in the north, south, and west, there are borders with ten different countries. The longest river is the Amazon, and Pico da Nebelina is about 3,000 metres high: it's the highest mountain in Brazil. The capital, Brasília, is inland, but many of the major cities are on the coast. The most famous is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugar Loaf mountain, Copacabana, and some great beaches. It is very popular with tourists.

1 Study the map of Brazil for one minute, then complete the sentences.

1 The town in the north is ____________
2 The town in the south is ____________
3 The capital is ____________
4 The longest river is the ____________
5 The highest mountain is ____________
6 In the north, it has a border with ____________
7 A popular city with tourists is ____________
8 It's famous for Sugar Loaf ____________
9 Brasilia isn't near the sea; it's ____________
10 Rio is on the ____________

2 Test yourself. Don't look at Exercise 1. What can you say about these places?

Recife: It's a town in the north of Brazil.
1 The Amazon 3 Brasília 5 Argentina
2 Pico da Nebelina 4 Porto Alegre 6 Rio de Janeiro

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 What's the capital, and where is it? __________________________________________
2 What are some of the other major cities? ______________________________________
3 Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they? ____________
4 Which places are popular in summer? __________________________________________
5 What are the famous places in your capital city? ________________________________
35 I can talk about my town  Do Unit 34 first

A Buildings and places in a town

- castle
- palace
- statue
- square
- cathedral (for Christians)
- church (for Christians)
- temple (e.g. for Hindus and Buddhists)
- mosque (for Muslims)
- market
- bridge
- park
- museum

building e.g. shop, church, castle vs square, park, etc.

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- museum  
- bridge  
- square  
- castle  
- cathedral  
- parque  
- musque  
- biding

2 Complete the sentences.

My sister got married in our little church.

- I think Buddhists use that.
- The ___________________ is the best place to see the river.
- The ___________________ is the cheapest place to buy food.
- You can learn about the history of the town in the local.
- You can see children playing in the ___________________ from my hotel window.
- There is a ___________________ of Nelson Mandela in the main ___________________.
- The ___________________ and ___________________ are both open to visitors from 10 until 5.
- The square is a nice _____________ to sit and watch people.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
### Facts

| size       | It's a
|------------|--------
| big/large  | medium-sized
| small      | city
|            | town
|            | village

| location   | It's
|------------|--------
| in the north-east of Poland |
| 50km west of Moscow | on the coast
| on a river |

| population | It's
|------------|--------
| over       | about
| 30,000     | just under

| interesting facts | It's
|------------------|--------
| famous for its cathedral |
| modern industrial |
|                   | It has lots of historic buildings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over 1 mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industrial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>historic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Write the phrases in the correct columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in the north-east</th>
<th>on the coast</th>
<th>famous for historic buildings</th>
<th>over two million</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an industrial town</td>
<td>just under 50,000</td>
<td>on the River Duero</td>
<td>a small village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>south-west of the capital</td>
<td>about 3,000</td>
<td>a large city</td>
<td>a medium-sized town</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Interesting facts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the north-east</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complete the text about Turin.

Turin is a large city, 140 km south-west (1) __________ Milan, (2) __________ the north-west (3) __________ Italy. It is (4) __________ the River Po and three other rivers. The (5) __________ is just (6) __________ one million (in fact, it is 908,000). It is an (7) __________ city; the car makers, Fiat, are based here, for example, but it also has many (8) __________ buildings, including palaces and castles.

### ABOUT YOUR TOWN

Write a similar text about your city/town/village.
Opinions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>What's your opinion of the new cathedral? — I think it’s wonderful.</td>
<td>Your opinion is what you think about something; it is not a fact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>It's busy in the summer when the tourists arrive.</td>
<td>If a place is busy, it is full of people, cars, and activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded</td>
<td>The bars get very crowded in the evenings.</td>
<td>Full of people or too full of people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polluted</td>
<td>It’s very polluted because of all the industry. The buildings are very dirty.</td>
<td>A polluted place has dirty air, water, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td></td>
<td>Very dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cosmopolitan</td>
<td>London and New York are very cosmopolitan cities.</td>
<td>Having people from many different countries living there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's lots to do</td>
<td>There's lots to do in the evening — discos, cinemas, and so on.</td>
<td>There are many activities and places to visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nightlife</td>
<td>The nightlife in my town is very good.</td>
<td>Places to go in the evening; bars, clubs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>It’s safe during the day but can be dangerous at night.</td>
<td>Free from danger. If a town is safe, you don’t need lots of police.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Do the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (✓) yes or no.

- 'The streets are very dirty.' YES NO
- 'I think it's very polluted, don't you?' YES NO
- 'There's lots to do during the day.' YES NO
- 'I think the nightlife is great.' YES NO

8. Complete the dialogue.

A What's your opinion of Walton?
B Well, there are people from all over the world, so it's very 1 ___________________ — I love that.
A Yes, but is it safe?
B Well, every city is a bit 2 ___________________ at night, but there's a lot to 3 __________________ here, and the 4 ___________________ is very good — lots of bars and clubs.
A And is it very busy in the centre?
B It's OK on weekdays, but it gets very 5 ___________________ at the weekends, with all the tourists.
The centre is also quite dirty; the river is 6 ___________________ because of the industry.

9. ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write your opinions, or ask another student.
1. Is your city/town/village a safe place to live, or is it dangerous?
2. What is there to do during the day?
3. Is it usually busy or quiet?
4. What about the nightlife?
5. Is it a very cosmopolitan place?
6. Is it a nice place to live?
36 I can describe the countryside

A On the farm

1. sky
2. wood
3. hill
4. farmer
5. valley
6. tree
7. field
8. farm (the house and fields)
9. lake
10. horse
11. boat
12. grass
13. dog
14. path

Glossary

own If you own something, it is yours.
grow Farmers grow potatoes, rice, etc. to sell.
a few Some; not a lot
crop a plant a farmer grows and sells, e.g., rice, apples

1. Look at the picture and the text. True or false? Write T or F.
   - There's a lake near the trees. ____________
   - There is nothing in the field. ____________
   - The farmer's in the boat. ____________
   - The path goes to the lake. ____________
   - The wood is on the hill. ____________
   - The dog lives on the farm. ____________
   - The horse is eating the grass. ____________
   - The sky's grey. ____________
   - There are a lot of chickens. ____________
   - The farmer grows fruit. ____________

2. Complete the words. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)

   ABOUT YOU
   - Yes, I do. It's 200 metres from my home.
   - Do you live near a w __ d? ____________
   - Do you live in a v __ ll y or on a h __ lt? ____________
   - Can you see any gra __ where you are now? ____________
   - Can you see a f __ w tr __ s where you are now? ____________
   - Are there any f __ __ ds near your home? ____________
   - Do you __ a d __ g or a h __ ts __ ? ____________
   - What cr __ ps do people gr __ w where you live? ____________
   - Do you know any f __ f __ ? ____________

3. ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Can you remember the words?
B In the countryside

I live alone in a beautiful area in the countryside. In the mornings, it is so quiet. I sit and listen to the birds – it’s wonderful. I’ve got a garden with lots of flowers and I grow all my fruit and vegetables, so I only eat fresh food, which is very healthy. The big problem is that public transport is terrible, but I’ve got a bike if I need to go to town. And it’s a bit lonely too, but I can always talk to Jack at Eatwell Farm, and sometimes I look after his chickens for him.

Glossary

area a part of a town, country or the world
the countryside a place with fields, woods, farms, etc. that is outside towns or cities
bird

wonderful very good or terrible
flower
fresh food food taken from the tree or plant; not old or from a tin

healthy If something is healthy, it helps to keep you well. If a person is healthy, they are well.

public transport system of buses and trains
bike (also bicycle) you ride a bike or go somewhere by bike

look after If you look after an animal, you give it food and see that it is healthy.

5. Is the meaning of the underlined words/phrases the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>➤ We always use public transport/the buses and trains here.</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. These carrots are fresh/clean.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. She’s looking at/looking after the dog.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I think city life is wonderful/terrible.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Have you got a bike/bicycle?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Are you alone/lonely at the moment?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. She’s healthy/very well.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. He lives in the countryside/on a farm.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. He rides his bike to work/goes to work by bike.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some sentences have two mistakes.

ABOUT YOU

I sometimes have to look after children. _after_  I look after my children every day.

1. I often buy flowers. _flower_
2. I love the countryside._contryside_
3. I’m very healthy._healthgy_
4. I see lots of birds in my aera._area_
5. Our public transport is wonderful._transport_
6. I’m often alone in the evening._along_
7. I eat fresh fruit every day._frish_
8. I never feel loney._lonely_

ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 6 true about you? If not, change them to make them true.
A Places to shop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Places</th>
<th>What they sell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>market (a number of stalls, outdoors or indoors)</td>
<td>food, sometimes furniture, CDs, books, flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping centre (a number of shops, usually indoors)</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department store (a large shop)</td>
<td>almost everything, but not usually food: beds, books, televisions, clothes, perfume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supermarket (a large shop)</td>
<td>food, drinks, cleaning products for the house, shampoo, things for the kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypermarket</td>
<td>the same as a supermarket, but also clothes, TVs, furniture. Hypermarkets are outside towns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butcher's</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baker's</td>
<td>bread and cakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist's</td>
<td>medicine, e.g. aspirin, also soap, shampoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deli (caterers)</td>
<td>sandwiches, bread, cheese, ham, coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper shop or newsagent's</td>
<td>newspapers, chocolates, cigarettes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Three answers are correct. Circle the wrong answer.
   1. I got the bread from the... supermarket
   2. I got the meat from the... supermarket
   3. I got these jeans from a... market
   4. I got this shampoo from the... deli
   5. I got the cheese from a... supermarket
   6. I got these CDs from the... shopping centre

2. Write two things you can buy in each of these places.
   1. department store
   2. chemist's
   3. market

3. Test yourself. Cover 'Places' and look at 'What they sell'. Can you remember the names of the shops and shopping places?
B Shopping habits

Hypermarkets are so convenient – you can get everything in one place.

I do the supermarket shopping on Thursdays when it’s quiet.

Supermarkets are so busy at the weekend, I don’t like queuing at the checkout!

You can choose from a lot of different things in a supermarket, but I prefer markets. They’re friendlier.

There are six of us in my family, so I fill two trolleys every week!

I get a lot of things on the internet. They always deliver to your home.

Glossary

convenient easy and quick to use
get buy
do (the) shopping buy food and things you need often, e.g. soap
queue wait in a line of people
checkout the place in a supermarket where you pay
prefer like something or someone more than another
fill make something full (The trolley in the picture is full.)
trolley

basket

deliver take things to a person or a place

4 True or false? Write T or F.
→ If you have a car, supermarkets are very convenient. ☐
  1 You can’t get CDs in a hypermarket. ☐
  2 You can fill a trolley or a basket. ☐
  3 You go to clothes shops to do the shopping. ☐
  4 You sometimes have to queue when you want to pay. ☐
  5 You can choose from a lot of different things in small shops. ☐
  6 You pay at the checkout in a supermarket. ☐
  7 At a supermarket, you put the things you want to buy in a trolley or basket. ☐
  8 All shops will deliver the things you buy to your home. ☐

5 Complete the words in the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

ABOUT YOU

1 When do you or your family usually do the s__________? __________________________
2 Do you p__________ supermarkets or small shops? __________________________
3 Do you often have to q__________ at the checkout? __________________________
4 Do you think supermarkets are co__________? __________________________
5 Do supermarkets in your town d__________ things to your home? __________________________
6 Where do you g__________ your fruit and vegetables? __________________________

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5 or ask another student.
I live in a block of flats near the town centre, in an area called Montpellier. I really like the flat, and my neighbour, Simon, is very friendly.

True or false? Write T or F.

1. Helen lives on the second floor.  
2. John and Lucy live on the ground floor.  
3. Miki lives on the top floor.  
4. Anna lives on the first floor.  
5. Simon lives in the basement.  
6. Ferdy's flat has a balcony.  
7. Rob's flat has a garden.  
8. The steps are at the front door.  
9. Ferdy needs to use the stairs or lift.  

Complete the words.

1. b___k of f___s  
2. b___k of f___s  
3. g___d f___r  
4. f___t d___r  
5. s___s  
6. g___n  
7. s___s  
8. n___r  
9. b___y  
10. t___c___e  

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.
Houses

BATHFORD
Modern family house in this quiet village with lovely views of the countryside. Large living room, dining room, study, modern kitchen and utility room. Upstairs there are four good-sized bedrooms and a family bathroom. Outside there is a large garden, a garage, and further parking for two cars.

Find the end of each word.

Complete the text.
I live in a modern house – it's only four years old. It's got a (1) _______ room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) _______. It's in the town centre, and from the living room I've only got a (3) _______ of the railway station, which isn't very nice. I leave my car on the street because I don't have a (4) _______. But it's got a small (5) _______ , so I can eat (6) _______ when it's warm.

My brother's got a house in a village near me, and from the house he's got fantastic (7) _______ of the countryside. Downstairs there's a living room, dining room, large (8) _______ and a (9) _______, where my brother works. (10) _______ there are four (11) _______ and two (12) _______, so there's lots of space when I visit with friends.

There's also (13) _______ for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer they eat (14) _______ all the time.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1. Do you live in a house or a flat?
2. If it's a flat, which floor are you on?
3. Have you got a garden? If so, how big is it?
4. What's the view? Is it nice?
5. Have you got parking?
6. What rooms have you got in your home?
I can describe a kitchen

A In the kitchen

1. shelf
2. tap (turn the tap on/off)
3. cup(s)
4. microwave
5. frying pan
6. freezer
7. sink
8. saucer(s)
9. hob
10. saucepan
11. (rubbish) bin
   The bin is full or empty
12. oven
13. fridge
14. washing machine
15. cupboard
16. dishwasher
17. cooker

1. Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.
   - Put the milk in the fr
   - Put those dirty clothes in the w
   - Put the dirty plates in the d
   - Put the cups and s in the c
   - Put the books on the s
   - Put the empty packets in the b
   - Put the meat in the o
   - Cook the eggs in the f
   - Put the ice cream in the f
   - Is the rubbish bin f
   - Heat the soup in the m
   - Could you turn the t off?
   - Boil the potatoes in that s

2. ABOUT YOU Write down anything in the picture you haven’t got.
   - I haven’t got a microwave, and my washing machine isn’t in the kitchen.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.
B Using the kitchen

1. **do the shopping**
2. **put the shopping away**
   (= in the cupboards, fridge, etc)
3. **put the dirty clothes in the washing machine; turn it on**
4. **clean the cooker**
5. **take the washing (= the clothes) out of the washing machine**
6. **make a sandwich**
7. **empty the bin**
8. **do the ironing**
9. **cook lunch for the family**
10. **do the washing-up**

---

**spotlight**  
**do + noun**

These phrases are very common in spoken English: *do the shopping, do the washing-up, do the housework, do the ironing*

Be careful!

**housework** = cleaning the house
**homework** = work teachers give students to do after class

---

4. **Complete the text.**

Saturday is my day for doing the ➤ **housework**... First, I go to town and do the (1) _________.  
Then I come back, (2) ________ everything (3) ________ in the cupboards, and (4) ________ the bin. If the kitchen's dirty, I (5) ________ it, and then I (6) ________ a cup of tea. My sister usually helps me. She (7) ________ all the dirty clothes in the washing machine and (8) ________ the washing out when it's finished. I (9) ________ lunch, but afterwards, we do the (10) ________ together. When the clothes are dry, I do the (11) ________.

---

5. **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers or ask another student.

In your home...

1. Who does the shopping? ________  
2. Who cooks the dinner? ________  
3. Who does the washing-up? ________  
4. Who cooks the dinner? ________  
5. Who empties the bin? ________  
6. Who does the ironing? ________

---

6. **Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.**

---

**PLACES** 101
I can describe a bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom and bathroom

Our rooms are all newly furnished, and include: a single bed, bedside table, desk and chair, chest of drawers, and wardrobe.

There are three bathrooms on each floor: each has a bath, shower, washbasin, mirror, toilet, and bidet.

We provide blankets, but students must bring their own sheets and towels.

1. One word is different. Which one?
   - bedside table
   - toilet
   - wardrobe
   - bath
   - shower
   - mirror
   - desk
   - chest of drawers
   - bed
   - chest of drawers
   - bidet
   - washbasin
   - towel
   - blanket

   Toilet is different. The other two are in a bedroom.

2. Write in the missing letter.
   - desk
   - side table
   - mir
   - th
   - chest of drawes
   - wasbasin
   - toilet
   - wardrobes
   - bide
   - blanke
   - seat
   - twel
   - shoer

3. ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about your bedroom and bathroom.
   In my bedroom, there's
   In my bedroom, there's

4. Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the pictures. Say the words for 1–14.
B In the bathroom

- Have a wash, you use soap.
- Clean your teeth, you use toothpaste and a toothbrush.
- Wash your hair, you use shampoo.
- Have a shave, you use a razor or an electric razor.
- Do your hair, you use a brush or a comb.
- Put on or take off make-up, you use make-up and tissues.

You can also put on or wear perfume.

5 Circle the correct word.

1. I wash my teeth with toothpaste or a comb.
2. I do/put on my hair with a razor or a brush.
3. She puts on or has make-up when she goes out.
4. Do you often have a shave or wash with an electric razor?
5. He washes or cleans his hair with expensive perfume or shampoo.
6. When you take off make-up you use tissues or a comb.

6 Write a, an or nothing (-).

1. I don't use ______ make-up.
2. I need ______ new comb.
3. Do you want ______ tissue?
4. I never use ______ perfume.
5. I buy ______ shampoo every week.
6. Have you got ______ electric razor?
7. I just use ______ soap.
8. I need ______ new toothbrush and ______ toothpaste.

7 ABOUT YOU

Tick (✓) a or b. Then if possible tell another student your answers.

- I usually have a bath.
  a) I usually have a bath.  
  b) I usually have a shower.

- I clean my teeth before breakfast.
  a) I clean my teeth before breakfast.  
  b) I clean my teeth after breakfast.

- I wash my hair twice a week or less.
  a) I wash my hair more than twice a week.  
  b) I wash my hair twice a week or less.

- I usually use a brush on my hair.
  a) I usually use a comb on my hair.

5 For women:
  a) I often wear perfume.  
  b) I don’t wear perfume very much.

6 For men:
  a) I use an electric razor.  
  b) I don’t use an electric razor.
41 I can describe a living room

1. Look at the picture. True or false? Write T or F.
   In the living room, there is only one...
   1. TV    2. light    3. cushion    4. carpet    5. radiator
   6. picture    7. rug    8. armchair    9. lamp
   10. fireplace    11. sofa    12. wall
   13. DVD player    14. coffee table

2. Complete the words.
   1. arm    2. pet    3. lion    4. tower    5. door
   6. ling    7. yes    8. hat    9. tins
   10. hair    11. g

3. ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers or ask another student.
   1. How many windows have you got in your living room? _____________________________
   2. Have you got radiators, a fireplace or both? _____________________________
   3. What have you got on the floor? _____________________________
   4. What's on the walls? _____________________________
   5. Are the lights on the ceiling or the walls? _____________________________
   6. What furniture have you got? _____________________________

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.
Review: Places

Unit 34

Complete the sentences.
1. Moscow is in the __________ of Russia.
2. Milan is in the __________ of Italy.
3. Bangkok is in the __________ of Thailand.
4. San Francisco is on the west __________ and New York is on the east __________ of the USA.
5. China is an __________ (very big) country.
6. Geneva is near the __________ between Switzerland and France.
7. Paris is the __________ of France.
8. Fujiyama is the highest __________ in Japan.
9. Bondi is a long __________ in Australia.
10. Brazil is __________ for Samba, football, and Carnival.

Unit 35

1. Write the opposite.
   - north __________ 3. south-west __________ 6. a busy street __________
   - an old city __________ 4. safe __________ 7. polluted __________
   - under a million __________ 5. there's lots to do __________ 8. opinion __________

2. Complete the texts.
   A. Granada is quite a __________ town about 350 km south (1) __________ Madrid. It has a (2) __________ of about 300,000 people. It's an old town with lots of (3) __________ buildings, and a famous (4) __________ called The Alhambra. It's a very popular (5) __________ with tourists.
   B. New York is a big (6) __________ , which is (7) __________ the Atlantic coast. It's (8) __________ for a number of things: the (9) __________ of Liberty, Times (10) __________ , and Central (11) __________ . It is a (12) __________ city, with people of many nationalities.

Unit 36

1. Complete the crossword.
   - Part of a town, country or the world. __________
   - You see this between two hills. __________
   - __________ food is good for you.
   - You go on this on a river. __________
   - A person who grows crops to sell. __________
   - Horses eat this. __________
   - A place where you walk between fields. __________
   - A large area of water with land around it. __________
   - Not with other people. __________
2 Complete the crossword.

1 An animal you can ride.  
2 Farmers ________ potatoes, rice, etc.  
3 Plants that farmers look after and then sell for food.  
4 Unhappy because you are not with other people.  
5 If you ________ something, it is yours.  
6 A place with fields, farms, woods, etc. outside towns and cities.

Unit 37

1 Complete the words.

1 A place where you get sandwiches, coffee, bread, etc. is a ________
2 A place with shops which is indoors is a ________
3 A shop where you buy newspapers, chocolates, etc. is a ________
4 A shop where you get medicine, shampoo, etc. is a ________
5 A shop where you get bread and cakes is a ________
6 A place where you buy books is a ________
7 A shop where you buy meat is a ________
8 A large shop where you can buy almost anything: clothes, beds, etc. is a ________
9 A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. is a ________

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?

1 where you buy books
2 wait in a line of people
3 easy and quick to use
4 like something more than another thing
5 a shopping place outdoors where different people sell you food, books, etc.
6 you find these in a market
7 the opposite of ‘outdoors’
8 in a supermarket, you put things in a trolley or a ________
9 buy ________
10 where you pay for things in a big shop

The word in the grey squares is ________.
Unit 38

1 Here are some definitions. What are the words?

▸ The room where you talk and watch TV. __________
1 The room where you wash and have a shower. __________________
2 The room where you cook food. __________________
3 The room where you sleep. __________________
4 The room where you do work/homework. __________________
5 The place where you put the car. __________________
6 The thing that takes you from one floor to another floor. __________________
7 The place outside your house where there are trees and flowers. __________________
8 The place where you live (a flat or a house). __________________

2 Match 1–8 with a–l.

▸ quiet  a floor
1 front  b views
2 lovely  c of flats
3 ground  d village
4 modern  e centre
5 dining  f door
6 parking  g house
7 block  h for two cars
8 town  i room

Unit 39

1 Write your answers.

▸ You boil vegetables in this. __________
1 You wash plates and cups in this. __________ or __________
2 You wash clothes in this. __________
3 You put rubbish in this. __________
4 You cook food very quickly in this. __________
5 You put clean plates, cups, and saucers here. __________
6 You keep milk and cold drinks in this. __________
7 You put ice cream in this. __________
8 You cook meat slowly in this. __________

2 Complete the sentences.

▸ Do __________ the shopping on the way home.
1 Come home and __________ the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.
2 __________ the dirty washing in the machine, and __________ it on.
3 Forty minutes later, __________ the machine off and take the washing __________.
4 __________ the washing-up and __________ the bin.
5 Finally, __________ lunch.
Unit 40

1 Put these words in two groups, and give a name to each group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wardrobe</th>
<th>towel</th>
<th>toilet</th>
<th>blanket</th>
<th>sheet</th>
<th>chest of drawers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shower</td>
<td>washbasin</td>
<td>single bed</td>
<td>desk</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>bidet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the questions, then answer them.

- What do you use when you wash your hair? shampoo
- What do you use when you make-up?
- What do you use when you shave?
- What do you use when you brush your teeth?
- What do you use when you wash your hair?

Unit 41

Look at the two pictures. Write down ten more differences.

- Picture 1 has got a sofa, but picture 2 hasn’t.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
42 I can talk about my school

A School subjects

chemistry  
physics  
biology  
maths  
ICT  
geography  
history  
literature  
music  
art  
PE  
design and technology  
modern languages

Chemistry, physics, biology, etc. are school subjects.
ICT = information communication technology
PE = physical education
RE = religious education

spotlight be good at something
If you are good at something, you do it well.
If you are terrible at it, you do it very badly.
I'm (quite) good at languages.
I'm terrible at maths.

1 Complete the words.
1 g r t  2 h s t r y  3 b l g  4 d s g n
5 g r ph  6 m th  7 m s c  8 l t r t

2 Write the name of a school subject.
Beethoven, jazz, music  1 football, gym
computers  3 Shakespeare

3 ABOUT YOU Circle the correct verb form. Complete the sentences about yourself.
1 At school, I'm / I was good at .
2 I'm / I was quite good at .
3 I'm / I was terrible at .
4 We don't / didn't study .
5 The subject I like / liked most is / was .

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the subjects.

STUDY AND WORK 109
B The education system

Education in England and Wales

You can ...

- start nursery school at 3
- go to primary school at 5
- stay at school until 18
- go to university
- leave school at 16
- go to college
- get a job
- get a job

Some pupils (schoolchildren up to the age of 16) wear a uniform.

5 Put the story in order.

a. where he learnt to read and write.
b. He stayed there until he was sixteen.
c. When Tom was three.
d. and then he went to college.
e. After that, he went to secondary school.
f. He left college when he was 18.
g. At the age of five.
h. he started nursery school.
i. he went to primary school.
j. and got a job in a bank.

6 Complete the questions, but don’t write answers.

- At what age do children go to primary school?
- When do they usually wear a uniform at primary school?
- When do people start school?
- When can they go to secondary school and get a job?
- Do they go to state, private, or both schools?

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 or ask another student.

Glossary

- start school: go to a new school for the first time
- state school: a school where education is free (no private school)
- stay at school: go to school for a period of time (also continue at school)
- college: place where you can study after you leave school
- uniform: special clothes that children wear in a school

Spotlight: at (the age of)...

Children go to school at 5 (or at the age of 5). Children go to primary school when they are five (years old).
Exams

When I was at secondary school, I went to all the lessons and did my homework, but I didn’t work very hard. So, when I took exams at 16, my results weren’t fantastic. I passed six, which was good, but I failed maths. My worst result was physics – I got a grade E, which was terrible. After that, I went to a sixth form college where I worked hard and did well. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That’s where I am now.

Glossary

lesson a period of time (about an hour) in school when you are learning something

do homework u: do work the teacher has given you to do at home (not homework)

work hard work a lot

result what you get in an exam, e.g. 80%, A, or 8/10

(best) worst superlative of bad or (the) best superlative of good grade you get a grade (e.g. A or B) or a mark (e.g. 15/20) in an exam
do well be good at something and get better at it (or do badly

Spotlight: Exam (Examination)

An exam is an important test at the end of a period of study.

take an exam = sit down and write your answers in the exam

pass an exam = take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A or 85%

fail an exam = take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D or 35%

8 Look at Rafael’s exam results on the right and answer the questions.

1. How many exams did he take? ________
   a. Did he take an exam in chemistry? ________
   b. How many did he pass? ________
   c. How many did he fail? ________
   d. What was his best grade? ________
   e. What was his worst grade? ________
   f. What did he get in English? ________

9 Complete the questions.

1. Six out of ten isn’t a very good mark ________.
2. I have to ________ an English exam tomorrow.
3. Did you ________ your homework last night?
4. Paula did very ________ in her German exam; she got a ________ A.
5. I got my exam ________ yesterday. I passed all of them.
6. Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He’s doing ________ at school, and last week he ________ an important maths exam.
7. Maths is my ________ subject. I’m terrible at it.

10 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions or ask another student.

1. How long are/ were your lessons at school? ____________
2. Do/ Did you work hard at school most of the time? ____________
3. At what age/ did you take important exams? ____________
4. How many did/ will you take? ____________
5. Will/ Did you pass all of them? ____________

STUDY AND WORK 111
43 I can talk about university  Do Unit 42 first

A A university degree

I started university two years ago, when I was nineteen, and I’m doing a degree in Spanish and French. The course lasts three years, and there are three terms a year. I work in the library a lot because – like many undergraduates – I have to write lots of essays. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and had to take it again. I got the result two weeks ago; fortunately I passed this time. When I’ve got my degree – a BA – I want to do research for a PhD.

Glossary

do a degree study at university for three or four years
course a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English course
term a period of study, usually about ten weeks
library a place where you can read and borrow books
undergraduate a student doing a first degree
(A graduate has a degree.)
write an essay do a piece of writing on a subject again one more time
fortunately We say fortunately when we give good news; we unfortunately
BA/BSc Bachelor of Arts/Science
MA/MSc Master of Arts/Science
do research study a subject for a long time to learn new information
PhD Doctor of Philosophy

spotlight How long does it last?
To last is to continue for a period of time.
How long does the film last? ~ Two hours.
The Masters course lasts two years.

1 Circle the correct word.
1 She did an English course
term
2 A term/degree lasts about ten weeks.
3 I’ve got a BA/BSc in physics.

2 Complete the dialogues.
1 How long does the term last? ~ About twelve weeks.
2 Have you got a degree in maths?
3 Did she have to write an essay? ~ Yes, three, in fact.
4 Can you do research next year? ~ Yes, I want to do a
5 Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, he passed.
6 Can he take the exam again? ~ Yes, next summer.
7 How long does the course last? ~ It’s only one term.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
1 How long do you need to study for a degree in chemistry?
2 How long do you need to study for a Masters degree?
3 How long does a university term last?
4 How long does a school term last?
5 If you fail exams, can you always take them again?
B University subjects and people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree subject</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>a doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychology</td>
<td>a psychologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economics</td>
<td>an economist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
<td>a lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
<td>a politician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>an engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>architecture</td>
<td>an architect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer science</td>
<td>an IT manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journalism</td>
<td>a journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business studies</td>
<td>a businessman/woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a manager</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Complete the sentences. Use the degree subject on the right to help you.
   - He always wanted to be a [________________________].
   - She wants to be a [________________________].
   - When did he become an [________________________]?
   - She's studying to become an [________________________].
   - Why does he want to be a [________________________]?
   - She works as an [________________________].
   - I don't know anyone who wants to be a [________________________].
   - Is it difficult to become a [________________________]?
   - I knew he'd become a [________________________].

5. Complete the words. ‘Degree subject’ or ‘person’? Write DS or P.
   - jo    mal  l  s  m
   - 1  l  wy  r  ds
   - 2  ar  it  ct
   - 3  c  mp  t  sd  c
   - 4  s  lw  r  e  g  ne  r
   - 5  ps  ch  l  g
   - 6  b  s  n  ss  st  d  s

6. Test yourself. Cover the subjects and people and look at the pictures.
   Can you remember the subjects and people?
I can name jobs

What do you do?  What's your job?

I'm ...

a police officer
a shop assistant
a builder
a businessman/businesswoman
a nurse
a teacher
a secretary
a hairdresser
a chef
a dentist
a soldier
a cleaner
a vet
a pilot
a lorry driver also a train/bus/taxi driver

Word | Example | Meaning
--- | --- | ---
self-employed | Are you self-employed? | working for yourself, not for a company
unemployed | I'm unemployed, but I'm looking for a job. | with no job, but wanting to work
retired | My grandfather is retired now. | My grandfather has stopped work because he is over 65.
housewife or househusband | She's a housewife now, but she was a lawyer. | a woman or a man who looks after the house and family and doesn't go out to work
boss | Who's the boss in this company? | a person who tells people what to do in their jobs
1 Circle the correct answer.

1. The most important person in the company is the
   5. police officer
   10. housewife

2. A police officer/Vet works with dogs and cats.
3. A shop assistant/Salesman sells things.
4. A housewife/nurse works in a hospital.
5. Retired people are usually old.
6. An unemployed person has/haven't got a job.
7. A busman/shoeshoemaker can be self-employed.
8. A busman/shoeshoemaker looks after people's shoes.
9. A layman/cleaning works in a kitchen.
10. A busman/shoeshoemaker works outdoors a lot.

2 Correct the spelling mistakes.

1. teacher
2. businessman
3. hairdresser
4. secretary
5. police officer
6. retained
7. builder
8. lorry driver
9. cleaner
10. housewife
11. self-employed
12. soldier

3 Complete the sentences.

1. Does she stay at home with the children? – Yes, she's a housewife.
2. Could she cut my hair? – Yes, she's a hairdresser.
3. Does he work for Alitalia? – Yes, he's a shop assistant.
4. Has he got a job? – No, he's a hairdresser.
5. Has she got a job? – Yes, she's a police officer.
6. Has she got a job? – No, she's a shop assistant.
7. Does she work with students? – Yes, she's a secretary.
8. Does he work in that restaurant? – Yes, he's a chef.

4 ABOUT YOU: Think about your family and people you know. Write their names if they do the jobs below.

1. a nurse
2. a vet
3. a sales assistant
4. a hairdresser
5. someone who is retired
6. a teacher
7. a pilot
8. a dentist
9. a businessman or woman
10. a boss

5 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. What are the jobs? Then cover the words and examples in the table and look at the meanings. Can you say the words?
I can describe a job

A Basic information

Where does he work?
He works in ... an office, a factory, a hospital.

Who does she work for?
She works for a car company, e.g., Toyota, an airline, e.g., Cathay Pacific.

What hours does he work?
He's got a full-time job, e.g., 40 hours a week; a part-time job, e.g., 15 hours a week; long hours, e.g., 12 hours a day from nine to five.

How much does she earn?
She earns a lot. Her salary is $80,000 a year. He doesn't earn very much. He gets low wages.

1. Complete the sentences with words and phrases in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>office</th>
<th>an American airline</th>
<th>she works</th>
<th>hours a day</th>
<th>work for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>long hours ✅</td>
<td>earn much</td>
<td>job</td>
<td>ten to six</td>
<td>a factory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He works long hours.
- She works ten hours a day.
- I work in a hospital.
- He works in an office.
- Who do you work for?
- How much does he earn?

- Where does he work?

2. Complete the text.

My sister is a nurse in our local hospital. She only works for about 15 hours a week — about 15 hours a week — and she doesn’t earn much money. Nurses in our country generally get wages. Her husband is a doctor, and he works very long — sometimes 14 hours a day. He earns about $90,000 a year, which is a very high in our country.

3. ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write answers to the questions. If you don’t, ask someone who has a job.

- What’s your job?
- Who do you work for?
- Where do you work?
- How many hours do you work?
B What do you have to do? 6

Daniel Alessi, architect
I design buildings, but I also have to:
• meet clients and discuss problems
  with them
• go to meetings with colleagues
• write reports
I spend a lot of time talking to people.

Eliane Sotano, secretary
I only work part-time now. I have to:
• make phone calls
• send letters, faxes and emails
• organize meetings for my boss
• type reports
I spend a lot of time answering the phone.

spotlight  Spend time doing something
Spend time means to do something for a period of time:
I spend a lot of time working and travelling.
I spent a week writing the report.

4 There are mistakes in six sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 He does a lot of phone calls. meeting
2 I have a meet this afternoon.
3 She spends a lot of time type.
4 She designs offices.
5 Could you organize a meeting?
6 I wrote the report last night.
7 We discussed about our problems.
8 I answered to the phone.

5 Complete the text.
I have a really interesting new job in the office of a language school. It's a full-time job and I work from nine to five. I (1) ____________ new students when they arrive at the school, and of course, I (2) ____________ the phone and (3) ____________ letters and emails. I (4) ____________ a lot of time (5) ____________ phone calls to help students who don't speak much English. I really like my other (6) ____________ in the office — they're very friendly, and if I have any problems we can (7) ____________ them. I also (8) ____________ meetings for my boss with important (9) ____________ from other countries. Sometimes, I (10) ____________ to go to meetings with her. It's a nice place to work.
46 I can talk about using a computer

A The computer

Correct the spelling mistakes.

1. hardcůpe  hard copy
2. mac  mouse
3. personalcommunicator  hard copy/printout
4. memory stick
5. monitor
6. keyboard
7. disk
8. webcam
9. mouse
10. mouse mat

Keep means 'to put something in a place so that you know where it is'.
Where do you keep your passport?
I keep it in a box under the bed.

Complete the sentences.

1. You type information using the ______ keyboard ______.
2. You listen to music using the ______ ______.
3. The information in your computer is on the ______ ______.
4. A small computer you can carry is called a ______ ______.
5. You can keep a copy of information from your computer on a ______ ______ or a ______ ______.
6. You move the ______ ______ with your hand.
7. You put the mouse on the ______ ______.
8. You read your emails on the ______ ______.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1. Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it? ______ ______.
2. Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it? ______ ______.
3. Have you got a laptop? If so, where do you keep it? ______ ______.
4. Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos? ______ ______.
5. Have you got a webcam? If so, what do you use it for? ______ ______.

Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.
B Word processing

1. I opened a new document and typed a letter.
2. I cut a sentence from the beginning of the letter.
3. I moved it to the end. (I clicked on the 'paste' icon.)
4. I saved the document in my 'letters' folder.
5. I printed it out. Or I did a printout.
6. I made a backup copy on a disk.

5 Match 1 – 7 with a – h.

a paper copy of your letter.
a backup copy.
the letter you typed in a folder.
your letter or report.
a word or sentence from your document.
a sentence to a different place.
a new document.
an icon.

Complete the sentences.

Which folder did you save the document in?
1. She ________________ on the copy icon.
2. You can write ‘Hello’ at the ________________ of an email, and ‘best wishes’ at the ________________ .

I always ________________ a backup copy of my work.
4. I typed a letter to my boss and then I ________________ a printout.
5. My letter wasn’t very interesting, so I ________________ a few sentences.
6. Did you ________________ your work in the correct folder?
7. When you ________________ a new document, you can start writing.
8. The beginning and the end of the letter were good, but the ________________ part was terrible.

7 Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember what the icons mean?

STUDY AND WORK 119
47 I can use email and the internet

A Email

Inbox

From  Subject  Date received  
Karl Muller  meeting  Today  10.12  
Alice Rees  my new car  Today  11.19  
Walkers  free holidays  Yesterday  13.15

From  Karl Muller  
Date  16 April 2008  
To  Lucy Atkins

Hi Lucy  
Here’s the information about the meeting in London on Friday. Could you send it on to Mark, please? I haven’t got his email address.  
Thanks  
Karl

London meeting 19.4.08

JAN

LUCY

Have you checked your emails this morning?  
Yes, Karl sent me an email with an attachment, and I have to forward it to Mark.  
And I got an email from Alice about her new car. I’ll reply to it later.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1. There are two messages in Lucy’s inbox. F  
2. Lucy has to send an attachment to Mark. F  
3. There’s an attachment with Alice’s email. F  
4. Lucy sent Karl an email. F  
5. Lucy hasn’t deleted Alice’s message. F  
6. Lucy will reply to Walkers’ email. F  
7. Lucy got an email from Karl. F  
8. Karl has got Mark’s email address. F

2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

1. I have to delete the junk mail.  
2. Did you my message?  
3. I received an email from Li today.

3 Have you checked your?  
4 Forward the attachment John.  
5 She Tia an email yesterday.

2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

1. I must reply Jean’s email.
2. Did you my message?
3. I received an email from Li today.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 How often do you send emails?  
2 Who do you send them to?  
3 What kind of junk mail do you receive?  
4 Do people send you attachments? What’s in them?  
5 Do you always reply to emails quickly?

Glossary

check your emails look and see if you have any email messages  
send or send If you send someone an email, you write it, and then send it to the person.  
get an email If someone sends you an email, you got it. (also receive)  
reply to an email write an answer to a message and send it

120 STUDY AND WORK
B The internet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>ABOUT YOU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What’s your email address?</td>
<td>It’s <a href="mailto:louella@yahoo.co.uk">louella@yahoo.co.uk</a></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you buy things on the internet?</td>
<td>Yes, I buy books.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s a web address for news in your country?</td>
<td>It’s <a href="http://www.bbc.co.uk/news">www.bbc.co.uk/news</a></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which websites do you visit most?</td>
<td>eBay and MySpace.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got broadband?</td>
<td>Yes, it’s very fast.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you go online?</td>
<td>I use the internet every evening.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you visit chatrooms?</td>
<td>Yes, I often chat online.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you download music onto your computer?</td>
<td>Yes, or I download it onto my MP3 player.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which search engines do you use?</td>
<td>I use Google and Yahoo.</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>online on the internet</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 web address email address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 visit a website go to a website</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 a search engine a website</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 fast quick</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 MP3 player CD player</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 download songs copy songs from the internet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 go online use the internet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 visit a chatroom chat online</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 broadband download</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 data computer information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have you got an MP3 player?</th>
<th>?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 We use different ................................</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 It’s not very expensive to ................................ music from the internet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Do you spend a lot of time ................................ the internet?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I’d like to get ................................ because my internet connection is very slow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 My favourite ................................ is eBay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 You can ................................ websites or chatrooms.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the ‘about you’ column in the table, or ask another student the questions.

Glossary

on the internet (not on internet) web address = internet address broadband With a broadband connection, you can get information from the internet very fast.

fast (also quick) ov slow (150 kph for cars is fast; 20 kph is slow.)
online on the internet chatroom a place on the internet where people read and reply to messages, usually about a subject, e.g. cars, music (The verb is chat.)
download If you download information from the internet, you copy it to your computer. (The information is called data.)

MP3 player a small machine you can listen to music on, e.g. an iPod
Review: Study and work

Unit 42

1 Complete the names of the school subjects.
   ▶ m________  
   1 b________  6 a________  
   2 h________  7 g________  
   3 l________  8 c________  
   4 p________  9 d________ and t________  
   5 m________  10 m________

2 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.
   ▶ start c________  
   1 take a________  a at PE  
   2 be good b________  b a uniform  
   3 leave c________  c secondary school ✓
   4 go d________  d at school until 18  
   5 work e________  e to school  
   6 wear f________  f a job  
   7 get g________  g university  
   8 do h________  h homework  
   9 stay i________  i hard  
   10 stay j________  j an exam

3 Complete the dialogues with one word.
   ▶ Did he stay on at school? ~ No, he left________ at 16.
   1 Did you do well in your exam? ~ No, I did ____________ .
   2 She passed the exam, didn't she? ~ No, she ____________ it.
   3 Nico didn't go to a private school. ~ That's right, he went to a ____________ school.
   4 Are you good at chemistry? ~ No, I'm ____________ at it!
   5 Is Riete's daughter at primary school? ~ No, she's only 4 – she's at ____________ school.
   6 Is Jao the worst at maths? ~ No! He's the ____________ ! He's very good at it.

Unit 43

1 Complete the text with a word in the correct form.
   Last month my sister started university. She's ____________ a degree in computer science. The course ____________ three years, and there are three ten-week modules in every year. She has to ____________ a lot of essays and pass exams. If she fails them, she has to take them ____________ , and then wait for the results. If she passes her final exams, she'll get her ____________ . If she does well, after that she can do ____________ to get a ____________ .
2 Complete the words in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People</th>
<th>Subjects</th>
<th>Phrases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>journalist</td>
<td>medic</td>
<td>do rese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undergrad</td>
<td>ecnon</td>
<td>do a deg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engin</td>
<td>architect</td>
<td>write an es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politic</td>
<td>polit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 44

Complete the sentences with words from the box. You can use each word more than once.

pilot dentist retired nurse businessman/businesswoman builder
police officer unemployed vet soldier hairdresser shop assistant

1 You have to stand up or walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer, a hairdresser, a soldier.
2 You need to be good with your hands to be _____________________________
3 You need to be good at maths or with numbers to be _____________________________
4 You probably have a lot of free time if you are _____________________________
5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are _____________________________
6 You work in an office most of the time if you are _____________________________

Unit 45

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

- write _______ a the phone
- send _______ b reports
- make _______ c problems
- answer _______ d clients
- organize _______ e buildings
- discuss _______ f long hours
- work for _______ g meetings
- design _______ h phone calls
- meet _______ i a computer company
- work _______ j emails

Practice your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.
2 Complete the conversation.

What's your job? – I work (1) an office.
Do you work long hours? – No, it's part-time (2).
How many hours is that? – Three hours (3) a day.
And what do you have to do? – I (4) a lot of time sending emails.
Do you get a good salary? – No, I don't (5) very much.
What about the people you work with? – Oh, my (6) are very nice.

Unit 46

1 Complete the words and phrases.

- Do you need hard copy?
  1 Did you bring your laptop?
  2 It's a nice key.
  3 I need a new mouse.
  4 What's a memory stick?
  5 Did you make a backup copy?
  6 The information is on the hard drive.
  7 Can you do a print?
  8 Have you got a camera?

2 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?

```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word in the grey squares is

```

124 REVIEW: STUDY AND WORK
Unit 47

1 Find eight more words or phrases in the circle.
   ▶ MP3 player

2 Complete the crossword.

   Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 179 to 201.

   I must _________ to her email.
   1 Send it as an _________.
   2 Did you get my _________?
   3 Do you often go _________?
   4 I always _________ junk mail.
   5 My computer is very _________.
   6 How many emails do you _________?
   7 Have you got _________?
   8 I spend hours on the _________.
   9 Did you _________ my email?
   10 He doesn’t _________ email very much.
   11 Do you often _________ chatrooms?

REVIEW: STUDY AND WORK 125
48 I can say what I like

A Love it or hate it?

1 I love football.  
2 I really like it.  
3 I like it.  
4 I quite like it.  
5 I think it's OK.  
6 I don't like it much.  
7 I don't like it.  
8 I hate football.

spotlight like/love/hate + -ing
After like, love, and hate, use a noun, a pronoun, or -ing form.

I like/love/hate football.  
I like/love/hate playing football.  
I like/love/hate learning English.

1 Who likes it more? A or B?

► A quite likes coffee. B really likes coffee.

1 A doesn't like studying. B thinks studying is OK.
2 A likes chocolate. B loves chocolate.
3 A really likes sport. B thinks it's OK.
4 A doesn't like shopping very much. B doesn't like shopping.
5 A hates pop music. B doesn't like pop music very much.
6 A really likes tea. B quite likes tea.

2 Correct the mistakes.

► Do you like watch tennis?

1 I hate it.  
2 They don't like doing homework very much.  
3 He doesn't like very much speaking English.  
4 I like quite shopping.  
5 She doesn't like drive.  
6 I think tennis OK.  
7 I like really going out with friends.  
8 She loves watch sport.

Do you like watching tennis?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student your answers.

1 I ___________ watching TV.
2 I ___________ studying English.
3 I ___________ driving.
4 I ___________ shopping for clothes.
5 I ___________ cleaning the house.
6 I ___________ writing emails.
7 I ___________ talking on the phone.
8 I ___________ going to the cinema.
### B It’s my favourite thing

**Name**
Mirko Zitec

**Work**
I work for a TV company. It’s a wonderful job – I love it.

**Study**
I’m learning to play the guitar. It’s good fun and my teacher’s fantastic.

**Sports**
My favourite sport is tennis, but I also enjoy playing football.

**TV/cinema**
I don’t watch TV – it’s very boring, but I’m interested in old films from the 1960s. I prefer old films to modern ones, in fact.

**Music**
I’m very keen on jazz; I go to a club every Friday.

---

### Glossary

- **wonderful/fantastic** very good
- **fun** If something is fun it makes you happy.
- **favourite** Your favourite thing or person is the one you like most.
- **enjoy doing something** If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is enjoyable.)
- **boring** or **interesting**
- **prefer ... to ...** like someone or something more than another person or thing
- **be keen on something** like or be interested in something

### Spotlight

**interesting/interested**

I think modern art is interesting means I’m interested in modern art.

not I’m interested in modern art.

### Write eight more sentences using words from columns 1, 2, and 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It’s not interested</td>
<td>It’s a wonderful city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>My favourite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>He’s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Was</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>It’s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>interesting</th>
<th>fun</th>
<th>interested</th>
<th>keen</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>favourite</th>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>enjoyable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you think flying is enjoyable?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is learning English good fun?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you enjoy meat to fish?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s your interesting city?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in sport?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in classical music?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you enjoy walking in the countryside?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you enjoy history is enjoyable?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ABOUT YOU**

Answer the questions in Exercise 5, or ask another student.
49 I can talk about sport

A Games

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>game</th>
<th>place</th>
<th>equipment</th>
<th>score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>football</td>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>goal football</td>
<td>1 – 0 one nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 – 1 two one as two goals to one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rugby</td>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>rugby ball</td>
<td>10 – 6 ten six as ten points to six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice hockey</td>
<td>rink</td>
<td>goal puck</td>
<td>3–2 three two or three goals to two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volleyball</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>net</td>
<td>15–10 fifteen points to ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>net racket tennis ball</td>
<td>6–3 six three or six games to three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6–2 is one set in tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>basket</td>
<td>60–44 sixty points to forty-four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Combine words to find games, places, equipment and scores.

- volley ✓ pitch tennis ice
- football ball ✓ basket nil
- racket three hockey ball

2 True or false? Write T or F. Change the false sentences and make them true.

- You score goals in basketball. [F] You score points in basketball.
- Sticks and rackets are equipment. [T]
- You have a net in tennis and volleyball. [T]
- You score points in ice hockey. [T]
- You play football on a court. [T]
- You play ice hockey with rackets. [T]
- You play volleyball on a court. [T]
- You score points in rugby. [T]
- You play rugby with a puck. [T]

3 Complete the sentences.

- I need to get a new tennis racket.
- I watched a fantastic game of ice hockey on TV last night.
- People who play hockey are usually very tall.
- It was six to four to Federer in the second set.
- What was the football result? It was three nil (3–0).
- The football pitch is next to the tennis court.

128 HOBBIES AND INTERESTS
B Football

**ITALY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Team</th>
<th>Played</th>
<th>Won</th>
<th>Drawn</th>
<th>Lost</th>
<th>Goals for</th>
<th>Goals against</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC Milan</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter Milan</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS Roma</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

League table

On Friday, AC Milan won their important match against Inter Milan. Khalidin scored the only goal in the 50th minute. This means they are still at the top of the table but now lead Inter by five points. On Saturday, Cagliari could only draw their match with Torino. At Palermo, Roma were leading 3–0 at halftime, but Palermo came back in the second half to make the final score 3–3. Lazio beat Livorno 3–1, while Treviso lost 3–1 to Fiorentina.

### Correct the bold words.

1. Shevchenko did two goals. □□□□□□□□□
2. Lazio have a play next Saturday. □□□□□□□□□
3. Inter are playing with Parma. □□□□□□□□□
4. AC Milan are number one of the table. □□□□□□□□□
5. Treviso lost 3–1 with Fiorentina. □□□□□□□□□
7. Milan win their game last week. □□□□□□□□□

### Complete the sentences.

1. They scored in the second half. □□□□□□□□□
2. It's an important next week. □□□□□□□□□
3. Sevilla 1–2 to Barcelona. □□□□□□□□□
5. It was 0–0 at half-time. □□□□□□□□□
7. Ronaldinho the goal. □□□□□□□□□
8. We our last match 4–1. □□□□□□□□□
9. They were 1–0 at half-time. □□□□□□□□□
10. What was the final? □□□□□□□□□

### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

Look at the football scores in a newspaper this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

- Bayern Munich beat Borussia Dortmund 1–0; Ballack scored in the 34th minute.

Glossary

- **match** a game between two teams, e.g., Parma and Lazio
- **against** One player or team plays against another player or team.
- **score** a goal or points in a game
- **top of the table/league** number one in the table/league
- **lead** be in front of others in a game or sport
- **half-time** a period of rest between the first and second half
- **final score** the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g., 3–2

** Spotlight**

**Irregular verbs**

- **won** We won 2–1 against Sampdoria.
- **beat** We beat Sampdoria 2–1.
- **draw with** We drew 1–1 with Palermo.
- **lose to** We lost 1–0 to Inter Milan.
50 I can talk about my free time

A Common activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I go ...</th>
<th>I play ...</th>
<th>I do some ...</th>
<th>What do you do in your free time?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>camping</td>
<td>cards</td>
<td>travelling</td>
<td>I collect things (e.g., stamps).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>table tennis</td>
<td>flower arranging</td>
<td>I watch TV and DVDs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>computer games</td>
<td>cooking</td>
<td>I spend time with friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the cinema</td>
<td>drawing and painting</td>
<td>I make my own clothes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?

- watch TV inside
- go to the gym, another place
- do some drawing
- go camping
- play cards
- do a lot of travelling
- play computer games
- do flower arranging

2 Complete the sentences with go, play, do, collect, or spend.

- I never play cards.
- Do you often go to the cinema?
- My brother is old clocks.
- I'd like to do the guitar.
- She spends a lot of cooking.
- Do you play table tennis?
- Do you spend time with your family?
- They go skiing every February.
- She spends quite a lot of travelling in spring.
- She spends all her own dresses.

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Write 'yes' by the ones you do now. Tick (✓) the ones you would like to do. Put a cross (X) by the ones you aren’t interested in.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the names of the activities.
Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many hobbies. Older people enjoy gardening, fishing, and repairing cars. For younger people, there are various clubs in school where children can learn many activities. Popular hobbies include sport, playing musical instruments, computers, listening to music, cooking and collecting different things.

Alexandra: “I like listening to rock and classical music. I also like playing football with my friends. But my favourite hobby is shooting (you can see me in the photo), and I’m quite good at it.”

Veronica: “I have many hobbies: cooking, reading, drawing, and singing in the shower. My favourite is drawing. It’s wonderful to see pictures appearing on paper.”

Dima: “I play the guitar, and I can sing Russian and English songs. I’m good at swimming, snowboarding and skiing. I also like travelling very much.”

5 True or false? Correct the false sentences.

Alexandra doesn’t like rock music. [False. She likes rock music.]
1. Older people enjoy gardening. ___________________________
2. Playing a musical instrument isn’t popular in Russia. ___________________________
3. Dima plays the piano. ___________________________
4. Veronica’s favourite hobby is reading. ___________________________
5. Dima has various hobbies. ___________________________
6. Veronica’s quite good at shooting. ___________________________
7. Veronica dances in the shower. ___________________________
8. Younger people like repairing cars. ___________________________

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1. What’s your favourite hobby? ___________________________
2. What hobbies are popular with older people? ___________________________
3. What hobbies are popular with younger people? ___________________________
4. What classical music do you listen to? ___________________________
5. Can you play a musical instrument? If so, what? ___________________________
6. Are you a good singer? ___________________________

HOBBIES AND INTERESTS 131
A Pop and rock

Arctic Monkeys are a four-piece band from Sheffield, England. They first became well known in 2004 when people were able to download their music from the internet. Their first two singles went to number 1 in the UK singles chart in 2005, and their first album, 'Whatever People Say I Am, That's What I'm Not', sold over 350,000 copies in its first week.

The group are: Alex Turner, who is the lead singer and plays the guitar, Jamie Cook and Nick O'Malley, who both play the guitar, and Matthew Helders, who is the drummer and also sings.

1. What can you remember? Circle the correct answer.
   - There are ________ people in the band.
   - They first became well known in 2004/2005.
   - People were able/unable to download music in 2004.
   - Their first two/three singles went to number 1.
   - Their first single/album sold over 350,000 copies in the first week.
   - Alex Turner/Jamie Cook is the lead singer.
   - Matthew Helders plays the guitar/drums.

2. Complete the sentences.
   - Paul McCartney plays the ________.
   - Another word for a band is a ________.
   - The most important singer is the ________ singer.
   - Someone who plays the drums is the ________.
   - A CD with one song on it is a ________.
   - A CD with about ten songs on it is an ________.
   - The ________ is the list of singles that sell most in a week.
   - The Beatles first became well known in the 1960s.
   - You can ________ music from the internet.

3. ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. Who's your favourite group? ____________________________
   2. Who's in the band, and what instruments do they play? ____________________________
   3. When did they first become well known? ____________________________
   4. What's the name of one of their singles? ____________________________
   5. What's the name of one of their albums? ____________________________
   6. What's your favourite song by this band? ____________________________

Glossary

band e.g. Coldplay, Franz Ferdinand, U2 (also group)
well known syn famous
be able to If you are able to do something, you can do it. are unable
download music copy music from the internet onto a computer, MP3 player, etc.
single one song on a CD
album a number of songs, usually about 10, on a CD
lead singer the most important singer
B Classical music

A concert of classical music.

Sir Simon Rattle, conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra.

Vanessa Mae, violinist, playing a violin concerto by Mozart.

Pianist Sviatoslav Richter, playing one of Beethoven’s piano sonatas.

Opera singer Cecilia Bartoli, performing in Così Fan Tutte.

Cellist Yo Yo Ma, playing the cello concerto by the English composer, Edward Elgar.

We say a book by (Tolstoy), a song by (Robbie Williams), a symphony by (Mozart), a painting by (Picasso), a film by (Martin Scorsese), etc.

4 Correct the spelling mistakes.
- violinista
- conductor
- orchestre
- classical
- concert
- cello
- composor
- performe
- pianiste

5 Complete the sentences.
- Music by Bach, Brahms or Mozart is classical.
- A large group of people who play classical music together is called an orchestra.
- The person who stands in front of them is the conductor.
- A person who plays the piano is a pianist.
- A person who plays the violin is a violinist.
- A person who plays the cello is a cellist.
- A person who sings opera is an opera singer.
- ‘Carmen’ is an opera by Bizet.
- Last night we went to a classical music concert. Pacido Domingo was magnificent, with the London Symphony Orchestra. It was fantastic.

6 Cover the texts and look at the pictures. What can you see in each one?
A Describing films

A thriller is often exciting.
A comedy is funny.
A war film is often violent.
A love story is romantic.
A action film is exciting.
A horror film is frightening.
A cartoon is often funny.

1. Make kinds of film from the letters.
   - rwa mlf
   - nilht
   - moyed
   - tanico ifml

   - an exciting
   - a romantic
   - a frightening
   - a violent
   - a funny
   - an exciting
   - a war film
   - a comedy
   - a love story
   - action film

   Write down new words in a notebook.

3. Write one adjective to describe each picture.
   - exciting
   -
   -
   -
   -
   -

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the different kinds of film in the pictures at the top of the page.
B What's on? _SOUND*

![Image of movie poster]

Mercedes (M) and Enrique (E) are talking.
M What's on at the cinema?
E There's a film on called Rumor Has It.
M Mmm. What kind of movie is it?
E It's a romantic comedy. It's about a woman and her relationship with her boyfriend and family. It's had good reviews.
M Oh. Who's in it?
E Er, it stars Kevin Costner and Jennifer Aniston.
M Oh, I like Kevin Costner – he's a good actor. Who's the director?
E Rob Reiner. He made When Harry Met Sally.
M Right. And where's it on?
E The Odeon.
M Ok. Let's go and see it.

Glossary
What's on? = 'What film can we see?'
cinema = a place where you see films
movie = a film
it's about ... = The subject is ...
review = an opinion of a film in a newspaper or on the radio, TV or internet
star = one of the main actors in a film
(they person is a star.)
actor = e.g. Kevin Costner or Jennifer Aniston
(A female actor can also be called an actress.)
director = person who makes a film, e.g. Steven Spielberg
Where's it on? = 'Where can we see it?'
see a film = at the cinema (or watch a film at the cinema)

9 Complete the conversation.

A What's on ___ at the cinema?
B A film called The Constant Gardener.
A Oh, what (1) ________ of film is it?
B It's a thriller.
A What's it (2) ________?
B I'm not sure, but it's had good (3) ________.
A Oh, and who's (4) ________ it?

B It's (5) ________ Ralph Fiennes and Rachel Weiss.
A They're both good (6) ________.
B Who's the (7) ________?
A A Brazilian called Fernando Meireles.
B OK. And where's it (8) ________?
A At the ABC cinema.
B Let's go and (9) ________ it.
A Fine.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 What kind of films do you like?
2 What was the last film you saw?
3 Where was it on?
4 Who are the stars of the film?
5 Who's the director?
6 What's it about?
53 I can talk about the media

A What is the media? 6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>media</td>
<td>The media often write about famous people.</td>
<td>TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>Do you read women’s magazines?</td>
<td>Something you can buy every week or month, often with stories and colour photos e.g. Time, Hole.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>What’s your opinion of the events?</td>
<td>what you think about something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td>Journalists report the news from all over the world.</td>
<td>give information on the news; the person is a reporter (=journalist)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event</td>
<td>The Olympic Games is a very big event.</td>
<td>something important that happens. It can be good or bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>Fortunately, nobody died in the accident.</td>
<td>stop living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war</td>
<td>The two countries were at war for ten years.</td>
<td>if a country is at war, it is fighting with another country; when a war ends, there is peace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disaster</td>
<td>The tsunami was a terrible disaster.</td>
<td>something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celebrity</td>
<td>There were a lot of celebrities at the first night of the film.</td>
<td>famous person, usually from TV, film or sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>There are too many adverts on TV and in the papers.</td>
<td>text, picture or short film which tries to sell you something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

1. What do the media say about him? What does the advert say about him?
   1. There is peace between the two countries. There is war between the two countries.
   2. What’s your opinion of the news? What do you think of the news?
   3. It was a great event. It was a great advertisement.
   4. He is reporting from Seoul. He is giving the news from Seoul.
   5. I read it in an article. I read it in an advertisement.
   6. She’s a TV celebrity. She’s on TV a lot.
   7. Where did he live? Where did he die?

2. Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.

The media is TV, radio, newspapers, (1) …………. ………… , and the internet. The media (2) …………. …………. on important (3) …………. …………. from around the world; for example, (4) …………. …………. like the Asian tsunami, or (5) …………. …………. between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their (6) …………. …………. of events round the world. And reporters also like to write about (7) …………. …………. such as Tom Cruise and Angelina Jolie.

3. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Say the words.
B Your media

Media questionnaire

1. Why do you read a newspaper?
   a) to find out what has happened
   b) because it has interesting articles
   c) for the sports results
   d) for the business news

2. What do you watch on TV?
   a) the news
   b) soaps
   c) films
   d) nothing much

3. What do you listen to on the radio?
   a) the news
   b) music programmes
   c) the weather forecast
   d) nothing much

4. Do you believe what you read or hear in the news?
   a) yes, all of it
   b) yes, most of it
   c) yes, some of it
   d) no, none of it

Glossary

newspaper e.g. The Times, The Herald Tribune, Le Monde (also paper)
find out get information or facts
happen take place, e.g. ‘We don’t know what will happen tomorrow’
article a piece of writing in a paper or magazine
on TV on the radio see in TV/on the radio, but in the paper
the news a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world
soap a story on TV two or three times a week
about the lives and problems of a group of people
nothing much nothing important
programme a TV or radio show, e.g. the news
weather forecast a description of the weather
for the next few days
believe think that something is true
all = 100%, most = 80 – 95%,
some = 30 – 50%, none = 0%

spotlight watch, see, listen, hear

We watch TV, but we see or watch a programme.
We listen to the radio, but we hear or listen to a programme.

4. Circle the correct answer.
   - See the film.
   1. Read an article on the paper.
   2. Listen to the news.
   3. Watch a programme on TV.
   4. Find out what has happened.

5. Complete the dialogues.
   - I always _______ a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read _______ of it?
   1. Did you _______ TV last night? ~ Yes, I _______ a programme about dogs.
   2. I read the story but I don’t _______. It’s true. ~ No, _______ if it is true. It’s all false.
   3. Have you heard the _______? ~ No, what’s _______?
   4. Did you _______ to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I _______ the 8 o’clock news.
   5. What’s in the _______ this morning? ~ I don’t know; I never buy one.
   6. Have you seen the weather _______? ~ Yes, it’s going to rain.
   7. What did you _______ on TV? ~ Oh, nothing _______.

6. ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (√) your answers, or write a different answer. Ask another student the questions.
Review: Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1 Write the phrases in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😊</td>
<td>😞</td>
<td>😞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I really like it.</td>
<td>I really like it.</td>
<td>It’s my favourite thing.</td>
<td>I think it’s quite boring.</td>
<td>I think it’s fantastic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think it’s quite boring.</td>
<td>I’m not very keen on it.</td>
<td>I don’t like it very much.</td>
<td>It’s quite enjoyable.</td>
<td>It’s quite enjoyable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❌</td>
<td>❌</td>
<td>❌</td>
<td>❌</td>
<td>❌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love it.</td>
<td>I think it’s OK.</td>
<td>It’s wonderful.</td>
<td>I’m not very interested in it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Circle the correct word.

- What’s your favourite actor?
  1. My mother isn’t interested/interesting in tennis.
  2. Our teacher is very keen on/for classical music.
  3. Do you enjoy drive/driving?
  4. We prefer swimming to/that running.
  5. I think that film’s very bored/boring.

Unit 49

1 Look at the games in the box. Write the answers below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>football</th>
<th>rugby</th>
<th>ice hockey</th>
<th>volleyball</th>
<th>tennis</th>
<th>basketball</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. These games use a round ball. Football.
2. Players use their hands more than their feet in these games: Ice hockey.
3. These games have more than four players when they are playing: Volleyball.
4. This game uses: a) rackets b) sticks.

2 Read Chelsea’s results last year, and complete the sentences below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>played</th>
<th>won</th>
<th>drawn</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>goals for</th>
<th>goals against</th>
<th>points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chelsea</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chelsea played 38 games. They won 29, they scored four, and they scored five. They scored 72, and finished the season of the league with 91 points.
Unit 50

1 Complete the dialogues.
   - Does he like gardening? — Yes, he's always in the garden.
   - What's your ___________ hobby? — I love camping. I ______________ every year.
   - Does she like cooking? — Yes, she ______________ a lot of cooking.
   - Does he have a hobby? — Yes, he ______________ old cars and bikes.
   - Do you play a musical ______________? — No, I don't.
   - Do you listen to ______________ music? — Yes, I do. I really like Mozart.
   - Do you ______________ a lot of travelling? — No. I prefer to ______________ time with friends.

2 Complete answer 'd' in each question. Then choose the answers that are true for you or your country.
   - I enjoy ...
     a playing cards  b singing  c collecting things  d ______________ time with friends
   - My favourite activity of these is ...
     a travelling  b camping  c reading  d ______________ to the gym
   - I'm quite good at ...
     a swimming  b cooking  c drawing  d computer ______________
   - I would like to ...
     a paint well  b play the guitar  c sing well  d ______________ the piano
   - ... is popular in my country:
     a Table tennis  b Skiing  c Fishing  d Flower ______________

Unit 51

1 Put the words from the circle into two groups. Give each group a title.

bond  ______________

band  ______________

violin  ______________

drummer  ______________

orchestra  ______________

cello  ______________

lead singer  ______________

composer  ______________

a single  ______________

conductor  ______________

2 Write a different name to complete each sentence.

1 ______________ is a famous opera singer in my country.
2 ______________ is lead singer with ________________ .
3 ______________ is a famous conductor.
4 The _______________ _______________ orchestra comes from my country.
5 ______________ is a great pianist.
6 ______________ by ______________ is one of my favourite albums.
7 ______________ is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
8 ________________ is the drummer with ________________ .
Unit 52

1 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ It’s an action film and it’s very exciting.
   1 It’s a w________ film and it’s very v________.
   2 It’s a c________ and it’s very f________.
   3 It’s a h________ film and it’s quite f________.
   4 It’s a t________ and it’s very e________.
   5 It’s a l________ story and it’s very r________.

2 Complete the conversation.
   A There’s a good film on at the Odeon cinema. It’s called Brokeback Mountain.
   B I’ve never heard of it. What’s it (1) ________? 
   A A relationship, a love relationship, between two cowboys.
   B Oh. Who’s (2) __________ it? 
   A It’s (3) ________ Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger.
   B Oh, I like Jake Gyllenhaal. He’s a very good (4) ________.
   A Yeah, and it’s had great (5) __________ in all the papers. The (6) ________ is Ang Lee.
   He made Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon. Would you like to go and (7) ________ it?

Unit 53

1 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it, and where does it go?
   I usually buy newspaper every day to find what has happened, but yesterday I
   listened the news in the car and then
   had dinner and watched it TV. As usual
   most it was bad news: more than twenty
   people in a terrible road accident. After
   the news, I watched an interesting about
   a television news who was in Thailand
during the Tsunami in 2004.

2 Match 1 – 6 with a – f.
   1 an opinion ______
   2 a news report ______
   3 an event ______
   4 an advertisement ______
   5 the media ______
   6 celebrities ______
54 I can arrange a holiday

Things you might do or arrange before you go abroad on holiday:
- book the flight
- book the accommodation
- find your passport
- get a visa
- get travel insurance
- get foreign currency
- pack your suitcase
- hire a car

spotlight **might** + verb

*Might* means 'it is possible that' or 'perhaps'.

You **might** be ill on holiday.

He **might** forget his passport.

It **might** be cold in March.

1 Circle the correct word.

- I have to [get/find] a visa.
- 1 We went [abroad/holiday] last summer.
- 2 I had to [hire/arrange] accommodation.
- 3 We might have gone to Japan in June.
- 4 I need to [hire/get] travel insurance.
- 5 Can we pack [hire] a car here?
- 6 I must [hire/find] my passport.
- 7 Have you [made/packed] your suitcase?
- 8 Did you book [have] the flight to Paris?

2 Complete the text.

I'm going on **holiday** for two weeks this Saturday. I wanted to go (1) ____________ this year, perhaps to the Far East, and finally decided to go to China. I booked the (2) ____________ with China Airlines. I needed (3) ____________ too, so I looked on the Internet for hotels in Beijing. I found a nice one and (4) ____________ to stay there for the first week. I also had to (5) ____________ a visa, and I got some foreign (6) ____________, — Chinese Yuan. I paid €30 for travel (7) ____________, — you never know, I (8) ____________, be ill or lose my things. Tomorrow, I'm going to (9) ____________, — my suitcase. I know I put my passport somewhere, but where? I'll have to (10) ____________ it before Saturday!

3 Test yourself. Cover the list of things you might do before you go abroad.

Can you remember the phrases and write your own list?

HOLIDAYS 141
I can book a hotel room

A Describing a hotel

travelog.com

Atlanta Hotel (Vilnius, Lithuania)

We stayed in this hotel near the Old Town where we had a beautiful bedroom with good facilities: minbar, internet access, satellite TV and air conditioning. The hotel has a great gym. There was 24-hour room service and the staff were very helpful with tourist information. The café bar was a very pleasant place to meet other guests, and we had a delicious breakfast there too. We recommend both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short stay.

1 Circle the right answer.

► The bar was ___________.
1 pleasant/ delicious.
2 The staff/guests work in the hotel.
3 It was a lovely hotel so I recommended/didn't recommend it to my sister.
4 A lot of tourists/guests visit our city.
5 Internet access and satellite TV are room service/facilities.
6 You can get drinks from the gym/minbar.

2 Complete the questions.

► What was the last hotel you stayed in ____________ ?
1 How long did you stay there?
2 Were the ____________ helpful?
3 Did the room have good ____________, e.g., internet access?
4 Did it have ____________ with drinks in your room?
5 Did it have ____________ TV?
6 Did it have air ____________ and central ____________?
7 Did you talk to other ____________ in the hotel?
8 Would you recommend this hotel to other people?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.
B Booking a room

Katie (K) is talking to the receptionist (R) at a hotel.

R: Hotel Metropole. Can I help you?
K: Oh, good morning. I’d like to book a double room with a bathroom for May 24th, please.
R: That’s fine. All our bedrooms are en suite.
K: Right, and how much is that?
R: It’s £60 a night, and breakfast is included in the price.
K: That’s great. And has the hotel got parking?
R: No. I’m afraid not.
K: Oh, what a shame. OK, well, never mind. I’ll take it.
R: Right. Can I have your credit card details please?

4 Answer the questions about the dialogue.

▶ Is Katja staying for two nights? No
1 Does she want a room for one person? 
2 Has the room got a bathroom? 
3 Is she happy about the price? 
4 Will she pay more for breakfast? 
5 How much is the room for one night? 
6 Can she leave her car at the hotel? 
7 Is she angry about the parking? 
8 Do they want her credit card number? 

5 Complete the dialogue.

▶ A: Regent Hotel, can I help you?
B: Oh, hello. I’d like (1) to (2) a room for next Tuesday, please.
A: Is that a (3) room or a (4) ?
B: A double, please.
A: All our rooms are (5), with bath or (6).
B: That’s (7). How much is the room?
A: It’s £45 (8) night, and breakfast is (9).
B: OK, and does the room have (10)?
A: I’m (11) not.
B: That’s a (12). Oh, well, never (13) . I’ll take the room.
A: (14), could you give me your credit card (15), please?

Glossary

book a room ask a hotel to keep a room for you for a future date
en suite a bedroom with a bathroom
right OK
£60 a night = £60 for one night
included If breakfast is included, you don’t pay any more for it.
(that’s) great fine; very good
parking a place to leave a car
I’m afraid not I’m sorry, but no.
ever mind It isn’t important

details information, e.g. the card number

spotlight That’s a shame/What a shame
You say this when someone tells you something which is a little sad, or you don’t want to hear.
I can’t come this evening.
~ Oh, what a shame.
~ Oh, that’s a shame.
I can communicate in an airport

A Check-in

When passengers get to the airport, they put their luggage (suitcase and bag) on a trolley and go to the check-in desk. There, they show their ticket and passport, and put their luggage on the scales. They can take hand luggage on the plane with them. The person at the check-in desk often asks, “Do you want a window seat or an aisle seat?” They give the passenger a boarding card, and they often say, “Have a good flight.”

1 Complete the words.

1 passenger
2 suitcase
3 bag
4 hand
5 luggage
6 weighing
7 scales
8 ticket
9 passport
10 seat
11 flight

2 Test yourself. Cover the text. Name the things in the picture.

B Departures

Departures from Bristol Airport

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flight</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Departure time</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EZY 6025</td>
<td>Barcelona</td>
<td>10.25</td>
<td>departed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KL 1048</td>
<td>Amsterdam</td>
<td>10.35</td>
<td>flight closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA 4021</td>
<td>Munich</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>last call gate 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR 483</td>
<td>Dublin</td>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>boarding gate 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA 7649</td>
<td>Milan</td>
<td>11.05</td>
<td>delayed until 11.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA 4084</td>
<td>Paris CDG</td>
<td>11.35</td>
<td>check-in desk 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

departed: if a plane has departed, it has left the airport. (The noun is departure.)
flight closed: You can’t get on the plane now.
last call: You must get on the plane now.
gate: the place where you leave the airport building to get on the plane.
boarding: if the flight is boarding, people are getting on the plane.
delayed: if a plane is delayed, it is going to be late. (It isn’t on time.)

3 Look at the departures board. It is now 10.30. Circle the correct answer.

1 Can you get on the Dublin flight now? Yes/No
2 Can you get on the Barcelona plane now? Yes/No
3 Can you get on the Amsterdam plane now? Yes/No
4 Is the Milan flight on time? Yes/No
5 How many flights are boarding now? 1/2/3/4/5

144 HOLIDAYS
4 Complete the airport announcements.
   ► Flight KL 1048 to Amsterdam is now closed.
   1 This is the last _______ for passengers on flight BA4021 to Munich. Please go to _______ immediately.
   2 Passengers on flight FR 483 to Dublin: this flight is now _______ at gate 7.
   3 We are very sorry that flight BA 7643 to Milan is _______.
   4 Would passengers on flight BA 4084 to Paris please go to _______ desk 22.
   5 Flight BA 7643 to Milan will now _______ at 11.50.

C Take-off and landing

You get on the plane and fasten your seat belt.

The plane takes off.

The plane lands and you get off.

You go through passport control. Someone checks your passport.

You collect your luggage from luggage reclaim.

You go through customs and leave the terminal.

5 Put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.

a collect your luggage b go through customs c fasten your seat belt
d the plane lands e get off the plane f leave the terminal
g get on the plane h the plane takes off i someone checks your passport

6 Complete the phrases.
   ► You leave the terminal _______.
   1 The plane takes off and _______.
   2 You fasten _______.
   3 You go through _______ and _______.
   4 You collect your _______ from _______.
   5 Passengers _______ _______ and _______ the plane.

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

1 How often do you travel by plane? _______.
2 What do you do in the airport when your flight is delayed? _______.
3 Do you like to sit in a window seat or an aisle seat? _______.
4 What hand luggage do you usually take on the plane? _______.

8 Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember the phrases for each picture?
We spent ten days in Hyères, a holiday resort in the south of France. We flew to Nice, then got a bus to Hyères. We rented an apartment near the beach, and that’s where we spent most mornings. I was happy to lie on the beach and sunbathe in my new swimming costume; my husband preferred a T-shirt and long shorts! He went swimming a lot – the sea was lovely and warm. We had lunch in the apartment, then relaxed for an hour or so. In the late afternoon we usually went for a walk, and in the evening, had dinner in one of the restaurants near the beach. It was a perfect holiday.

Glossary

resort a place where a lot of people go for a holiday
fly flew travel by plane
get a bus travel by bus (also take a bus)
rent an apartment, house, etc. pay to use an apartment, house, etc.
apartment rooms you rent for a holiday (also flat)
lie to lay the woman in the picture is lying on the beach
sunbathe take off your clothes and sit or lie in the sun
relax do nothing and enjoy yourself
an hour or so about an hour
go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself
perfect If something is perfect it can’t be better.

Write the words for the meanings.

1. A place where people go for a holiday. resort
2. Pay money to use a house for a period of time. rent
3. Women often wear one on the beach. swimsuit
4. Men often wear these on the beach. shorts
5. Rooms you rent for a holiday. apartment
6. You can swim in this, and it’s not a pool. sea
7. Very good; cannot be better. perfect
8. Lie in the sun in a swimming costume or shorts. sunbathe

Complete the sentences.

1. I went for a swim in the sea and looked at the sea.
2. We took a bus to the mountains, and then for a walk.
3. We rented an apartment in a small holiday near Malaga.
4. It takes an hour or to get to the beach.
5. We spent two days near Paris, then from Charles de Gaulle Airport to New York.
6. I want to relax, so I’m just going to on the beach and sunbathe.

Test yourself. Cover the text and name 1 – 4 in the picture.
58 I can describe a sightseeing holiday

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>map</td>
<td>You can get a map in Tourist Information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guidebook</td>
<td>Our guide was very good. A guidebook is useful.</td>
<td>A person (guide) or book (guidebook) which describes a place for tourists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typical</td>
<td>Look – a typical tourist, with a guidebook and camera.</td>
<td>A typical thing is a good example of its kind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go sightseeing</td>
<td>We went sightseeing yesterday.</td>
<td>go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art gallery</td>
<td>I’m going to an art gallery this afternoon.</td>
<td>a place where people can look at paintings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit museums or art galleries etc.</td>
<td>You should visit the British Museum in London.</td>
<td>visit go and see a place for a short time museum a place where you look at old or interesting things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look round</td>
<td>I want to look round the town.</td>
<td>walk round a place to see it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on a (guided) tour</td>
<td>We went on a tour of the old town.</td>
<td>a short visit to a town, museum, etc. sometimes with a guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get lost</td>
<td>I got lost so I asked for help.</td>
<td>If you get lost or are lost, you don’t know where you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take photos</td>
<td>I took lots of photos.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the correct word.

- art museum/Gallery
- make/take photos
- go/do sightseeing
- guide/guided tour
- visit/go a museum

2 Complete the sentences.

- We went on a _______ tour.
  1. She _______ a lot of photos of some _______ old French villages.
  2. You _______ go and look _______ the museums – they’re very interesting.
  3. I _______ lost because I didn’t have a _______ .
  4. We went to the _______ gallery to see those Picasso paintings.
  5. We _______ on a tour of the centre and the _______ was interesting and funny.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

When you visit new towns/cities, do you:

1. go sightseeing?
2. take a map with you?
3. buy a guidebook?
4. take photos?
5. visit museums and art galleries?
6. look round the shops?
7. often get lost?
8. go on a guided tour?
I can use the bank and post office

A At the bank

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I use this card in this cash machine?</td>
<td>If it’s a Visa card, yes. also ATM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where can I change dollars into euros?</td>
<td>In a bank, a hotel, or a bureau de change.</td>
<td>change (money) e.g. give someone dollars and get the same in euros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a bureau de change near here?</td>
<td>Yes, there’s one at the station.</td>
<td>an office where you can change money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which currency do I need for Argentina?</td>
<td>You need pesos.</td>
<td>the money that a country uses, e.g. dollars in the USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve got Japanese yen. What’s the exchange rate for the euro?</td>
<td>It’s 142 yen to the euro.</td>
<td>exchange rate how much money from one country you can buy with money from another country, e.g. US$10 = €12.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do I sign this?</td>
<td>Just here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What commission do you charge?</td>
<td>We charge 1%. (‰ = per cent)</td>
<td>commission the money you pay a bank, e.g. for changing currency charge: ask someone to pay a certain price for something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Match 1 – 5 with a – f to make questions.

1. Where can I change my euros...?
2. What currency do I need...?
3. Can I use this card...
4. What’s the exchange...
5. Is there a bureau de change...

a. for Brazil?
b. for the peso?
c. do you charge?
d. in this cash machine?
e. in the station?
f. into dollars?

2 Complete the sentences.

1. The banks... 1.5% commission.
2. ... dollars into euros.
3. The... in China is the yuan.
4. What’s the exchange...?
5. You pay one... cent to the bank.
6. You get money from a... machine.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1. What’s the currency in your country?
2. Do you know the exchange rate for the US dollar?
3. When you travel, where do you get or change money?
4. Do you use a cash machine to get your own currency?
5. Where do you find cash machines in your country?
At the post office

1 You want to send a letter to a friend.

You write the name, address and postcode on the envelope.
You put a stamp on it.
You post it in the letter box or postbox.
The postman or postwoman delivers it in the next day or two.

2 You want to send a parcel to Germany.

You take it to the post office.
'How much is this parcel to Germany, please?'
'Put it on the scales, please. 350 gms – that's £3.43.'
'That's fine. And can I have two stamps for postcards to Germany?'

4 Answer the questions. Choose answers from the box.

- Where do you post letters? In a postbox, in a letter box
- What do postmen do? ________________
- What do you write on an envelope? ________________
- Where do you take a parcel? ________________
- Where do you put the parcel? ________________
- What do you put on an envelope/parcel? ________________
- Who takes parcels to people's homes? ________________
- Which three things can you send? ________________

5 Use the words to make questions. You need to add one more word.

- please / Japan / to / parcel / is / how / this / ? How much is this parcel to Japan, please?
- box / is / near / there / here / a / ? ________________
- scales / can / it / you / the / on / ? ________________
- Argentina / it / for / three / can / stamps / ? ________________
- letter / where / post / this / ? ________________
- Russia / much / is / postcard / how / a / ? ________________
- post / buy / envelopes / you / can / the / at / ? ________________

6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the sentences?
Review: Holidays

Unit 54

Read the text on the right.
Find words in the text to match the meanings.
► of another country which is not your country
1 plan or organize
2 money that a country uses
3 pay to use something for a short time
4 go to another country
5 a time when you don’t have to work
6 arrange and pay for something in advance
7 put your things in a bag before you travel
8 a journey by plane
9 a place to stay, e.g. a hotel

When you go abroad on holiday, you might need to arrange certain things. Firstly, you will probably need to book a flight and your accommodation. For some countries, you will need to take or send your passport to the embassy of that country to get a visa, and you might also need foreign currency. Some travellers like to hire a car before they go, and then get it at the airport. And when you pack your suitcase, don’t forget your passport!

Unit 55

1 Match 1 – 10 with a – k.
► double, 6 I’m afraid, 9 what, 7 never, 1 air, 10 included, 5 satellite, 4 room, 1 book, 2 internet, 3
1 conditioning, 2 a shame, 3 in the price, 4 included, 5 not, 6 mind, 7 a room, 8 heating, 9 service, 10

2 Complete the conversation.
► A Can you recommend a good hotel in New York?
B Yes, we (1) ___________ in a great hotel last year – the Excelsior.
A Did all the rooms have a bathroom?
B Yes, they were all (2) ___________.
A And did it have a minibar, and TV and everything?
B Yes, the room (3) ___________ were great. And the hotel (4) ___________ were really friendly and helpful too.
A How about the food?
B It was really good – in fact, it was (5) ___________. And the hotel wasn’t too expensive – it was about $50 a (6) ___________.
A That’s good, isn’t it? And has it got (7) ___________?
B I don’t know. We didn’t have a car.
A It sounds perfect. I think I’ll (8) ___________ a room, then.
Unit 56

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.
   1 departures  2 gate  3 last  4 passport  seat  hand  boarding  flight  luggage
   5 seat  6 hand  7 aisle  8 boarding  9 flight  a luggage  b belt  c closed  d seat  e seven
   f card  g call  h control  i desk  j board

2 Complete the sentences with one word. Use the Past Simple in questions 6 – 10.
   1 I couldn’t carry my suitcases, so I put them on a ____________________.
   2 I had to show my passport and ____________________ at the check-in desk.
   3 I put my luggage on the ____________________ and it was 25 kilos.
   4 The check-in person said, “Have a good ____________________.”
   5 I was an hour late because my flight was ____________________.
   6 When I ______________ on the plane, somebody was in my seat.
   7 I ______________ my seat belt and started reading the in-flight magazine.
   8 It was sunny when we took off, but it was raining when the plane ____________________ at Manchester Airport.
   9 After we got off the plane, we went and ______________ our luggage.
   10 When I ______________ through customs, there was nobody there.

Unit 57

One word is missing in each line of the text. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

sunbathed  went  get  perfect  holiday  or  flew  rented  resort

We had a lovely holiday in France last year. We to Marseille Airport and then we had to a bus to Cassis, which is a very nice holiday by the sea. We an apartment in the centre of the town. Every morning we for a walk round the town, then we on the beach for an hour so. The weather was for the whole week.

► holiday

1 ____________
2 ____________
3 ____________
4 ____________
5 ____________
6 ____________
7 ____________
8 ____________

REVIEW: HOLIDAYS 151
Unit 58

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

1. She went on a guiding tour of the city. She went on a guided tour of the city.
2. We're going in a tour of the city this afternoon.
3. Did you go seeing in Paris?
4. She made a lot of photos on her holiday.
5. Did you visit at the museum?
6. There were lots of typic tourists.
7. There's a good exhibition at the art museum.
8. Have you got a guided book about London, please?

Unit 59

1. Write words beginning with P and C.

- post
- postal
- postman
- postage
- post office
- percentage
- postcard
- postage stamp
- price
- country
- currency
- cash
- change
- stamp
- save
- save money
- save stamps
- save money stamps
- save money for stamps
- save money for change
- save money for postcards
- save money for travel
- save money for holidays
- save money for gifts
- save money for presents
- save money for presents stamps
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
- save money for presents stamp
- save money for presents save
- save money for presents save money
- save money for presents save stamps
- save money for presents save money for change
- save money for presents country
- save money for presents currency
- save money for presents cash
- save money for presents change
60 I can meet and greet people

A Introductions

Sam and Mary meet for the first time...

Jane: Sam, this is Mary.
Mary: Hello.
Sam: Hi. Nice to meet you.

two hours later...

Mary: Well, goodbye, Sam. Good to meet you.
Sam: Yes. I hope to see you again. Bye!

Glossary

bye a short form of goodbye
shake hands

spotlight Introductions

- Hi is informal and common with young people.
- How do you do? is also possible, but now very formal.
- We often use Nice to meet you or Good to meet you when we meet people for the first time, and when we say goodbye the first time after we meet them.

1 Make sentences from the words.

▶ you / do / how / do / ? How do you do?
1 meet / nice / hello / you / to ______________________________
2 this / Max / Hanna / is ______________________________
3 again / hope / you / bye / to / I / see ______________________________
4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet ______________________________

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Lucia: Emma, this ______ is Alex.
   Alex: Hi, Emma. _____________ to meet you.
   Emma: _____________.
2 Alex: Goodbye, Emma. I _____________ to see you _____________.
   Emma: Yes. _____________.
3 Chris: Jan, this _____________ Dan.
   Jan: _____________, Dan. Good _____________ _____________ _____________.
   Dan: _____________, Jan.
4 Dan: Well, _____________, Jan. I hope _____________ _____________ _____________ again.
   Jan: _____________.
B Meeting a friend

Tess (T) meets her friend Matt (M) in a bar.

T Hi, Matt. How are you?
M Fine, thanks. And you?
T Yes, not bad.
M Good. And how’s Sarah?
T Yeah, she’s very well.

An hour later they say ‘goodbye’.
M OK. I’ve got to go now. See you later.
T Sure. About 7:00?
M Yeah, that’s fine.
T Good. See you then.
M OK. Bye.

3 Complete the phrases.

1 S __ you __
2 I __ st __ g __ n __ w __
3 S __ you __ t __
4 H __ s __ y __ w __
5 S __ you __
6 H __ r __ th __ s __
7 S __ you __ n __ d __ y __
8 I __ g __ t __ g __ w __
9 Th __ s __ f __

4 Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don’t use the same word more than once.

1 Jim Hi, How __ goes __ Sam I’m very __. And you?
Jim Yeah, not __. And __ your wife?
Sam She’s __.

2 Jim Sam, I __ Sam I’m __ now.
Jim OK. See you __.
Sam OK. See you.
Jim Sure, What time? 6:30?
Sam Yeah, __ fine. See you __.

C Saying hello and goodbye

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hello</th>
<th>goodbye</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anytime (24 hours)</td>
<td>before lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before lunch</td>
<td>after lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hello</td>
<td>morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

What do you say when you:

see someone anytime?  
see someone before lunch?
see someone after 6:00 p.m.?
see someone after lunch?
say goodbye at 11:00 p.m.??
## 61 I can use special greetings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Say this to someone when:</th>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you say goodbye</td>
<td>have a nice day/evening</td>
<td>thanks, you too and you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone is going to bed</td>
<td>have a good/lovely weekend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it's Christmas/new year/Easter (Easter is a Christian festival in March or April.)</td>
<td>happy/merry Christmas happy New Year happy Easter</td>
<td>happy Christmas, etc. the same to you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it's their birthday</td>
<td>happy birthday</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they've done something well or passed an exam</td>
<td>well done</td>
<td>thank you thanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are getting married or having a baby</td>
<td>congratulations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are going to do something difficult, e.g. before an exam</td>
<td>good luck not good luck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are going away, e.g. on holiday</td>
<td>have a good/nice holiday/time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone has arrived recently, or returned home after a long time</td>
<td>have a good journey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>welcome to London</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>welcome home/back</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cheers</td>
<td>cheers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

**Spotlight:** cheers

Cheers has two other meanings in informal spoken English.
1. Thank you Here's the money you lent me. ~ Oh, cheers.
2. Goodbye See you later. ~ Cheers.

**a. You too.**

**b. The same to you.**

**c. Good luck.**

**d. Welcome home!**

**e. Well done!**

**f. Congratulations.**

**g. Sleep well.**

**h. Cheers!**

**i. Have a good journey.**

**j. Happy birthday!**

#### 2 Complete the phrases.

1. Have a nice/good dinner! /eɪv/ /w. /n. /h. /dish/ .


3. Good night./Good l. /Well d. /W. /h. home! .

#### 3 Test yourself. Look at column one in the table and cover columns two and three. Can you remember the phrases and responses?
62 I can ask for information

A About people

Who do you live with, Tracey? And what's your brother like?
And your boyfriend – what does he do?
How long have you known him?
I understand you're learning Spanish.
How often are the classes?
And why Spanish?
Whose idea was it to live in Spain?
What's wrong with England?
How about you? What do you think?
What kind of work can you do in Spain?

Glossary

What's wrong with England? = What's the problem with England?

1 Make questions from the words.
- for / do / work / who / you / ? Who do you work for?
- you / often / there / go / how / do / ?
- like / what / music / do / kind of / you / ?
- he / does / what / do / ?
- have / lived / how long / there / you / ?
- wrong / Peter / with / what's / ?
- this / to / belong / does / who / ?
- his / like / what's / flat / ?
- like / you / why / her / don't / ?

2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.
- Because she's horrible to me. □ □
  a Ten years. □ □
  b He's very angry with me. □ □
  c It's small but very nice. □ □
  d Twice a year. □ □
  e It's mine. □ □
  f He's a doctor. □ □
  g Rock and pop. □ □

3 Complete the dialogues.
- What kind of animal is it?
  ~ I think it's a horse.
  1 How _______ do you go? ~ Every week.
  2 ________ jacket is this? ~ It's mine.
  3 ________ she like? ~ She's very nice.
  4 I don't speak German. ________ about you? ~ Yes, I speak a bit of German.
  5 How _______ have you worked there?
  ~ Six months.
  6 ________ does this belong to?
  ~ I'm not sure. I think it's Mark's.
B About places

What do you recommend? (= What do you think is good?)
How long is it open? (= How many hours?)
How far is it to the river? (= How many metres?)
How many places can we visit with this ticket?
Is the castle worth seeing? (= Do you recommend the castle?)
What time/When does the galax close/shut? (are open)

Where’s the nearest bank? (= Where’s the first bank from here?)

Which restaurant do you recommend?

4 Circle the correct answers.

How (far) long is it to the museum?
1 Which/What is your address?
2 How long/time do you need?
3 What hour/time does it open?
4 How much/places did you visit?
5 Where’s the nearest/next cafe?
6 Is the museum worth to see/seeing?

spotlight which or what?

Use which when there is a small number of possibilities.
We have a double room or a twin. Which do you prefer?
In other situations, use what.
What’s the address of the hotel? (see Which is the address?)

5 Complete the questions.

When ____________ does the post office open?
1 How ____________ is it to the station?
2 How ____________ places did you go to?
3 There are two. ______ do you want?
4 ____________ ’s the phone number of the bank?
5 It opens at 8:00, but when does it ______?
6 Is it _______ going to see Notre Dame?
7 Where’s the ________ underground station?
8 There’s a lot to see. What do you ________?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Answer the questions or ask another student.

1 Where do you live?
2 How long have you lived there?
3 Which places are worth visiting?
4 How far are they from your home?
5 Can you recommend any restaurants?

SOCIAL ENGLISH 157
I can ask for things

A Requests and responses

Requests (in the classroom)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Request</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can you bring the dictionaries here, please?</td>
<td>( \checkmark ) Sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?</td>
<td>OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuri, could you possibly take these books to the staffroom?</td>
<td>Yeah, sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elena, can you change places with Gabi?</td>
<td>Yeah, no problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you lend me a pen, Borja?</td>
<td>Yes, of course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmitri, could you possibly wait here a few minutes?</td>
<td>( \times ), I'm afraid I can't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**

- bring
- take
- finish something  do or complete the last part of something
- change places  e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's place and Gabi sits in Elena's place
- lend  give something to someone to use for a short time
- wait  stay in one place for a short time until something happens
- I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, but I can't say I'm afraid but I can't

**spotlight**  
**Being polite**

- Can and could have the same meaning in the table.
- Could you possibly ...? is more polite for a bigger request.
- Please is very common, and makes a request more polite.
- I'm afraid ... is used to say politely that you are sorry about something.

1. Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

   1. Can you clean the board?
   2. Could you lend me a pen? — Yes, please.
   3. Could you wait here a few minutes? — I'm afraid I can't.
   4. Lie, can you change places with Maris, please? — Yeah, sure.

2. Use the words to write requests and responses. Use can, could and could ... possibly and different responses.

   1. finish / exercise / homework
      - A: Could you take these books away, please?  
        - B: Yes, please.
   2. change places / Maria
      - A: Can you change places with Maria?  
      - B: Sure, I will.
   3. bring / notebook / tomorrow
      - A: Could you bring your notebook tomorrow?  
      - B: Sure, I will.
   4. lend / pencil
      - A: Could you lend me a pencil?  
      - B: Sure, here you are.
   5. wait / classroom a few minutes
      - A: Can you wait a few minutes in the classroom?  
      - B: Sure, I will.
3 Write new sentences. Change the bold words. The meaning must be the same.

- Can we sit down? Is it OK if we sit down?
- Is it OK if I use this dictionary?
- Is it OK if I make a coffee?
- Can I stay for another ten minutes?
- Is it OK to close the window?
- Can you lend me your book?
- Can I sit here? ~ Yes, of course.
- Can I use the computer? ~ I'm sorry but I need it.
- Is it OK to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, sure.

4 Ask for permission. Use different words in each sentence.

- You want to sit near the window. Can I sit near the window?
- You want to go at one o'clock today.
- You want to borrow a rubber.
- You want to go to the toilet.
- You want to sit in a different seat.

5 Test yourself. Write five more ways to give permission from this unit.

- Yes, sure.
- ________________________
- ________________________
- ________________________
- ________________________
64 I can invite people

Inviting
Would you like to...
Do you want to...
... go out for a meal/a drink?
... come round for a coffee?
... come to a party?

Saying yes
Yes, great!
Yes, I'd love to!
That sounds lovely/fun/good.
That would be lovely/nice.

Saying no
I'm afraid I can't.
I'm sorry, but I'm busy.
I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.

spotlight Would you like to... or Do you want to...?
Would you like to... is a little more polite than Do you want to...

1 A word is missing. Where from?
Write it at the end.

► How/ tomorrow? about
1 Would you like to come round later? __________
2 Yes, I'd love. __________
3 Do you want to out for dinner? __________
4 That lovely. __________
5 I'm afraid can't. __________
6 That be nice. __________
7 Do you want come to a party? __________
8 I'm, but I'm busy tonight. __________

2 Complete the questions and answers.

► Invite someone for a drink in a bar.
Say yes.
1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
Say yes.
2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.
Say no politely.
3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow.
Say yes.
4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café.
Say no politely.

---

Glossary

invite ask someone to come to a party, your house, etc.
go out for a meal or a drink means 'go to a restaurant or a café/bar'
come round come to my home
party a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, play games, etc.
great very good you wonderful
I'd love = I want to do it very much (I'd = I would)
That sounds lovely = I think that's a lovely idea.
That would be lovely = I would like to do it.
busy If you are busy, you have a lot of things to do.
I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, (but) I can't see I'm afraid but I can't

A Do you want to go out for a drink? __________
B That would be lovely. __________

A Would __________
B Yes, g. __________

A Do __________
B I'm a. __________

A Would __________
B Yes, that's __________

A Do __________
B I'd __________, but __________ gym.
65 I can make suggestions

Ask for a suggestion

What shall we do
this weekend?

Where shall we go

Make a suggestion

Shall we go to the beach?

Maybe we could go out for a meal.

What about going to an exhibition?

Let’s go out for a drink.

Say ‘yes’

Yes, (that’s a) good/great idea!

Yeah, let’s do that.

OK, fine.

Say ‘no’, or make another suggestion

I’m not sure (about that).

Well, I’d prefer to stay at home.

Hmmm... or perhaps we could go to the mountains.

1 Put the dialogue in order.

I’d prefer to get them at the station.
The weather’s nice, so
Yes, good idea.
What shall we do this weekend?
Maybe we could take the train.
Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
what about going to the beach?

Glossary

suggestion an idea that someone gives you to think about
maybe/perhaps possibly
What about ...? = What do you think about ...?

spotlight Saying no

It isn’t very polite to say no to a suggestion in English. It’s more polite to say, I’m not sure, or make another suggestion. Shall we go out? — Well, I’d prefer to stay in.

2 Correct the mistakes.

We could have a party this weekend.

1 What do we do this evening?

2 Do you have a suggestion?

3 What about going to see a film?

4 I’d prefer go by train.

5 Yes, that a good idea.

3 Write in a word where there is a /.

1 A What we do / evening? B What / going / the theatre?

A I’m / sure / that

2 A What / we / on Saturday?

B Perhaps we / go out for a meal

A OK, let’s / that

3 A Where / we go / afternoon?

B / go to an exhibition

A Yeah / a good /
66 I can offer, accept, and refuse

A Offering food, drink or help

Offering food/drink
Would you like a biscuit?
Do you want something to eat?

Accept = say yes   Refuse = say no
Yes, please.
Thanks.
Thanks. Could I have...

Offering help
Can I give you a hand?
Do you need some help?

Accept = say yes   Refuse = say no
Yes, please.
Thanks a lot.
Thank you (very much).
No, I'm fine, thanks.
No, don't worry.

spotlight Saying thank you
Thanks or Thanks a lot are the most common ways of thanking someone in spoken English. Thank you (very much) is more formal.

1 Correct one letter of one word in each sentence.

- Could you like something to drink? Would
  1 Can I give you a band? __________
  2 Do you want something to ear? __________
  3 So you need some help? __________
  4 Would you like a drink? __________

- No, I worry. __________
  1 Can I give you hand? __________
  2 Thank you much. __________

- Would you a drink? __________
  3 Would you a drink? __________
  4 Thanks lot. __________
  5 No, fine, thanks. __________

2 One word or contraction is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

- Do you want something to eat?
  A Would __________ a drink?
  B Yes, __________. __________ water?
  A Do __________ help?
  B No, __________, thanks.
  A Would __________ eat?
  B Yes, __________ an apple?
  A Can __________ hand?
  B No, __________ worry.

3 Complete the questions and answers.

- Offer someone food.
  1 Offer someone a drink.
    Accept, and ask for some water.
  2 Offer someone help.
    Say no politely.
  3 Offer someone food.
    Accept, and ask for an apple.
  4 Offer someone help.
    Say no.
B Offering to do something

Would you like me to make the dinner? ~ That's very kind of you.

Shall I carry your bag? ~ OK. Thanks.

Do you want me to answer that? ~ Yes, please.

Let me pay for the drinks. ~ That's very kind of you.

spotlight let me + verb
We use let me + verb when we really want to do something for someone.
Let me pay for lunch. Let me get the train tickets.
Let me give you a lift to the station. = Let me take you in my car.

4 Match 1–6 with a–g.

1. I'm really hungry. ______
   a. Let me carry it for you.
2. I haven't got much money. ______
   b. Do you want me to ring the doctor?
3. Are the dishes dirty? ______
   c. Shall I make you a sandwich?
4. I have to go to the airport. ______
   d. That's OK. Let me pay for the meal.
5. This suitcase is really heavy. ______
   e. Yes. Would you like me to wash up?
6. I don't feel very well. ______
   f. Let me give you a lift.
7. ______
   g. Yes. Shall I see who it is?

5 Circle the correct word.

1. Shall/Let me answer the door.
   a. Shall/Let I'll carry that for you?
2. That's very kind for/of you.
   b. Shall/Let I give/take you a lift to work?
3. Let/Shall I get the shopping.
   c. Let me/I do the washing-up.
4. Let/Shall I answer the phone?
   d. Do you like/want me to make the breakfast?
5. Would/Do you like me to help?

6 Complete the conversations. Write one word or contraction (e.g. it's, I'll) in each gap.

1. A I'm just going to the post office.
   B Well, __________________ me give ______________ a _____________.
   A Oh, _________________. That's very ______________ of _________________.
2. A I'm really tired!
   B OK, ________________. I _______________ the dinner for you?
   A Yes, ________________. And then let _______________ do the washing-up afterwards.
3. A Jeannie, that shopping looks really heavy. Let ________________ it for you.
   B Oh, ______________ very much.
4. A Oh, no! That's the phone again!
   B Do you ________________ me to answer it?
67 I can say sorry and respond

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Saying sorry/apologizing</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sorry. I don’t speak English very well.</td>
<td>That’s all right. I’ll speak slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m sorry. I’ve broken a cup.</td>
<td>That’s OK. Don’t worry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m very sorry — I’ve lost your pen.</td>
<td>It doesn’t matter. I’ve got lots of pens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I forgot to post your letter. I’m really sorry.</td>
<td>Never mind. I can post it later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorry I’m late. The traffic was terrible.</td>
<td>Oh, don’t worry about it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary
apologize to someone say sorry to someone
rude very polite
that’s all right don’t worry it doesn’t matter never mind
These phrases all mean ‘it’s not important it’s OK’.
break past broke
be broken
lose past lost If you lose something, you can’t find it.
forget past forgot past forgotten are remember
really sorry very sorry
sorry I’m late not sorry for be late

1 Correct the mistakes.

I’m sorry for being late. I’m sorry I’m late.

1 A I’m really sorry. I’ve lost your dictionary. ____________________________
   B Don’t mind.

2 A I’m sorry, I’ve forgotten your book. ____________________________
   B No worry. ____________________________

3 A I’ve broken your cup — I’m very sorry. ____________________________
   B It isn’t matter. ____________________________

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 A I’m really sorry. ____________________________
   B It’s all right.

2 A Sorry I’m late. ____________________________
   B Don’t worry. ____________________________

3 A I’m sorry. ____________________________
   B It doesn’t matter. ____________________________

4 A It’s broken — I’m very sorry. ____________________________
   B Oh, never mind. ____________________________

5 A I’m sorry late. I missed the bus. ____________________________
   B That’s OK. ____________________________

6 A , could you repeat that, please? ____________________________
   B Sure, no problem. ____________________________

7 A Did he you? ____________________________
   B Yes, he was very sorry. ____________________________

8 A Did he say sorry? ____________________________
   B No, he’s very ____________________________

3 Test yourself. Cover the responses in the table and read the sentences on the left. Give correct responses.
I can express my opinion

I think the school is excellent.
He wants our opinion of the course.
I thought it was a very funny book.
What do you think of London?
I like this dress. What do you think?
Max said the course was a waste of money.

- Yes, I agree.
- Well, I don’t think it’s very good.
- I agree with you. I loved it.
- Personally, I don’t like big cities.
- I’m not sure. I think I prefer the other one.
- I disagree. I thought it was great.

1 Put the words in order, and add one more word to make a sentence.
- very / I / good / it’s
  I think it’s very good.
1 do / it / think / what / you

2 you / agree / I

3 don’t / very / I / good / it’s

4 waste / it / money / a / was

5 I / like / personally / didn’t

6 one / I / other / prefer

Glossary
think / thought have an opinion about something excellent very good agree with someone have the same opinion as someone we / I / agree or disagree opinion what you think about something I don’t think it’s very good we / I / think it’s not very good personally You can use personally to introduce your opinion I’m not sure You can use I’m not sure to disagree politely prefer like one thing more than another a waste of money a bad way to use money (also a waste of time)

2 Complete the dialogues.
- I like this. – Yes, I agree.
  1 I love this colour. What do you ________ of it? – ________, I don’t like it very much.
  2 Pete likes it. What’s your ________? – Yes, I ________ with him. I think it’s great.
  3 What did you think ________ her idea? – Personally, I didn’t ________ it was very good.
  4 I really like her new flat. – I’m not ________; it’s a bit small. I think I ________ her old one.

3 ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think.
1 I think people watch too much TV.
2 Smoking’s bad for you.
3 I think football’s boring.
4 Money makes you happy.
5 Public transport in my country is excellent.
69  I can use the phone

A  Phone vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone numbers</th>
<th>What's your phone number? ~ It's 245731.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What's your mobile number? ~ It's 07700 900 796.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What's the (area) code for Liverpool? ~ It's 0151.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone verbs</th>
<th>You call or ring someone, pri rang = phone someone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You text someone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= send someone a text (message) e.g. CULAR = see you later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You take a message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= take information during a phone call and give it to someone else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You leave a message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= give information to someone on the phone who then gives it to someone else</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone problems</th>
<th>The line is engaged/busy. = the person you phoned is speaking on the phone already</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The person is out/ isn't in. = not there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It's the wrong number. = you make a mistake with the number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The battery's flat on the mobile. = no electricity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

1 He phoned/rang his sister. S
2 What's your phone/mobile number? D
3 ... two six oh/zero four ... D
4 I left/looked a message. D
5 I'm sorry, she isn't in/ out. D
6 The line was busy/engaged. D
7 I texted him/ sent him a text. D

2 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

1 Did you ___________ Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but the line was ___________. I'll ___________ her later.
2 What's your phone number? ~ It's 345489. And the c___________ for Oxford is 01865.
3 Did you _________ Sue last night? ~ Yes, but she was o__________, so I left a m__________. I r__________ her mobile too, but I think the b__________ was flat.
4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w__________ number.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What's your phone number, area code and mobile number? ____________________________
2 Who do you ring most often? ______________________________________________________________________________________
3 How long do you spend on the phone every day? ________________________________________________________________________
4 Do you text a lot? If so, who to? ___________________________________________________________________________________
B Phone conversations

Laura (L) is phoning Brenda (B).

B Hello?
L Hello?
B Yes, speaking.
L Oh, hello. This is Laura, Laura Prebairn.
B Hi, Laura, how are you?
L I’m fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please?
B Yes, just a moment – I’ll get her for you...

Anton Jackson (AJ) is speaking to a receptionist (R).

R Hello?
AJ Oh, hello. Can I speak to Mr. Ellis, please?
R I’m sorry, but he’s out at the moment. Who’s calling?
AJ It’s Anton Jackson.
R Right, and do you want to leave a message?
AJ Yes, please. Can you tell him I’ll ring him back this evening?
R Of course, no problem.
AJ Thanks very much. Goodbye.

4 Tick (√) the correct response.

Can I speak to Sam, please?
He’s not in at the moment.
1 Hello?
Speaking. Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please?
Just a moment. It’s Natasha.
3 Hello, is that Galina?
Oh, hello, this is Carla. Speaking.
4 Hello, this is Angela Brandt.
Oh, hello, how are you? Who’s calling?

5 Complete the conversations.

1 A Hello?
B Hello. Is that Marisa?
A Yes, (1)________________.
B Oh, hello. (2)______________Dagmar.
A Oh, hello, Dagmar.
B Is Mikki (3)______________, please?
A I’m sorry, he’s out at (4)______________.
Can I take a message?
B Yes, please. Tell him I’ll (5)______________him ______________after lunch.

2 A Hello?
B Oh, can I (6)______________Tibor, please?
A Yes, (7)______________moment. I’ll (8)______________him for you.

3 A Hello?
B Oh, hello. (9)______________Joanna?
A Yes, (10)________________.
B Hello, Joanna, (11)______________, ’s Rudy.
A Hi, Rudy. How are you?

Glossary

Is that Brenda? Not Are you Brenda?
speaking = Yes, this is Brenda.
This is Laura or It’s Laura not I am/Here is Laura
just a moment wait a minute get someone go and find someone and bring them to the phone
at the moment now
Who’s calling? This is the polite way to ask ‘Who are you’?
ring/phone/call someone
back phone someone again
Review: Social English

Unit 60

1. Do these have the same meaning or a different meaning? Write S or D.

|     | Afternoon! | Good afternoon! | S
|-----|------------|----------------|---
| 1   | Morning!   | Good morning!   |   |
| 2   | Hi         | Bye!           |   |
| 3   | I'm fine.  | I'm well.      |   |
| 4   | See you later. | See you tomorrow. | |
| 5   | Good to meet you. | Nice to meet you. | |
| 6   | How are you? | How are things? | |
| 7   | Hello.     | Hi, there.     |   |
| 8   | Bye!       | Goodbye!       |   |
| 9   | How do you do? | How are you? | |
| 10  | I've got to go. | I must go. | |

2. Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across ←→.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>→ evening</th>
<th>↑ hope</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>↓ how</th>
<th>do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>later</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>↑ not</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>again</td>
<td>↓ how</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑ see</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>soon</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>↓ shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>↑ hi</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>↑ nice</td>
<td>↑ see</td>
<td>hands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 61

What do you say in these situations?

► It's Christmas Day. Happy Christmas!
1. It's your friend's birthday. ______________
2. You say goodbye to a colleague on Friday afternoon. ______________
3. Someone tells you they are getting married. ______________
4. A friend is going to take an exam. ______________
5. A friend has passed an exam. ______________
6. Someone has returned home after a long time. ______________
7. A friend is starting a holiday tomorrow. ______________
8. It's the first day of January. ______________
Unit 62

1 What is the correct question word or phrase for each answer?

1. When/What time? — 7.30 p.m.
2. — Because I like it.
3. — Ten kilometres.
4. — Twice a week.
5. — Next to the bank.
6. — Fifteen.
7. — Three hours.
8. — I prefer this one.
9. — It’s mine.
10. — It’s John.

2. Circle the correct form then write your answers.

1. What’s/How’s your English like?
2. I’ve got one sister. What’s/How about you?
3. And what do/are you do?
4. And what does/it your best friend do?
5. How often/many do you study English every week?
6. How long/long time have you studied English?
7. What kind/kind of games do you like?

Unit 63

1. Complete the sentences with / or you.

1. Can I / borrow a dictionary, please?
2. I don’t mind if / you go now.
3. I’m afraid / we need this.
4. Could / you possibly carry this for me?
5. Can / you lend me your bike, please?
6. Could / we borrow €10, please?
7. Is it all right if / you use your phone?
8. Could / we take it to the postbox, please?
9. Dine, could / we change places with Mia?

2. Find five more responses in the box to the request. Write them below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>no</th>
<th>ahead</th>
<th>afraid</th>
<th>problem</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>sure ✓</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>that’s</td>
<td>yes ✓</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>I’m</td>
<td>course</td>
<td>fine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

Yes, sure.

__________________________________________
__________________________________________
__________________________________________

REVIEW: SOCIAL ENGLISH 169
Unit 64

Correct one mistake in each sentence.
1. Do you want to come to a party tonight? __Do you want to come to a party tonight?__
   A. Would you want to have lunch tomorrow? __Would you want to have lunch tomorrow?__
   B. I'm afraid but I can't.
2. Do you like to go skiing this weekend? __Do you like to go skiing this weekend?__
   B. Yes, that is fun! __Yes, that is fun!__
3. Would you like to go round here for a drink tonight? __Would you like to go round here for a drink tonight?__
   B. Yes, I love to, but I'm busy.__
4. Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend? __Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend?__
   B. I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend. __I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.__

Unit 65

Complete the dialogue.
A. Would you __like__ to go out tomorrow?
B. Yes. Where (1) __________ we go?
A. Well, (2) __________ we (3) __________ go swimming.
B. Mmm, I'm not (4) __________ about that. It's a bit cold for swimming.
A. OK. What (5) __________ going to an exhibition?
A. Yes, that's a good (6) __________. (7) __________'s do that.

Unit 66

Change two words to make the pairs of sentences correct.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Yes, thanks.</th>
<th>No, please.</th>
<th>Yes, please. No, thanks.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Would you want a sandwich? Do you like a drink?</td>
<td>No, please.</td>
<td>Yes, please. No, thanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Do you need a help? Do you want some hand?</td>
<td>No, I'm sorry, thanks.</td>
<td>No, don't fine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>No, I'm sorry, thanks.</td>
<td>Thank you lot much.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Thank you very.</td>
<td>Thank you very much.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Shall me pay for the coffees. Let I do that for you?</td>
<td>Let I do that for you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>That's much kind of you. Thank you very.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

170  REVIEW: SOCIAL ENGLISH
Unit 67
Read the situations, then write the dialogues. Use as many different phrases as possible.

1. Someone lends you a pen and you lose it.
   A. I'm sorry, I've lost your pen.
   B. That's OK, don't worry.

2. Someone asked you to post a letter yesterday, but you forgot.
   A.
   B.

3. You arrange to meet someone, but you are late.
   A.
   B.

4. You make coffee for someone, but break one of their cups.
   A.
   B.

5. Someone says something to you, but you can't hear it.
   A.
   B.

Unit 68
Make words from the letters. Use the definitions to help you.

- To have an idea about something
  1. What you think about something
  2. Very good
  3. Have a different opinion from someone
  4. Like one thing more than another
  5. Used to introduce your opinion
  6. A bad use of money

- hiktn
- noipoin
- telexcne
- gredeasil
- nerepf
- spanelloy
- stofaeaw

Unit 69
1. Rewrite the underlined words but keep the meaning the same.
   - I'm sorry, Paul is out. ( isn’t he )
   - I can’t phone her now.
   - Is that Sue? – Yes, this is Sue.
   - I’ll call you back later.
   - Can I speak to Anton? – Yes, wait a minute.
   - She texted me earlier.

2. Write the phone conversation in the right order.
   Yes, just a moment – I’ll get her.
   Hello?
   Hello, Keira. How are you?
   Is that Cheryl?
   I’m fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
   Thanks.
   Yes, speaking.
   Hi. It’s Keira.

   A. Hello?
   B.
   C.
   D.
   E.
   F.
   G.
70 I can use common adjectives

A Common opposites

1. She's asleep, not awake
2. The bird's dead, not alive
3. He's very strong, not weak
4. She's a rich woman, not poor
5. These are common names in Italy, not unusual
6. This Swiss knife is very useful, not useless
7. The screen is very wide, not narrow
8. The children are noisy, not quiet

Spotlight

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after be. It's a quiet village. The village is quiet.
You can't use alive, awake and asleep before a noun. The train is alive, not an alive train.

1. True or false? Write T or F.
   - The River Nile is very narrow. F
   - Julius Caesar is still alive. T
   - People are noisy at football matches. T
   - Dictionaries are useless. F
   - Some people talk when they're asleep. T
   - Elephants are very strong. T
   - America is a poor country. F
   - Toyota cars are common in Japan. T
   - Pasta is unusual in Italy. F

2. Write the opposite of the bold word.
   - They're very rich. poor
   - It's a useless knife. useful
   - My arms are quite strong. weak
   - Is he alive? dead
   - The people are very poor. rich
   - It's a noisy place. quiet
   - It's a quiet town. noisy
   - The garden's quite wide. narrow
   - That's very common. unusual
   - Is she awake? asleep
   - It's quite a narrow road. wide

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the adjectives and their opposites.
B Classroom habits

Teachers:

Simon
I tell my students to write new words in a vocabulary notebook. I think it’s really helpful.

Jill
It’s very annoying when students are late for class.

Martin
When students do activities, I have to give clear instructions.

Carol
I don’t like students who talk when I’m listening to other students. That’s really irritating.

Students:

Petra
It’s impossible to remember everything, so it’s necessary to revise things you’ve studied in class.

Ivan
I write new words on my hand, and then on my arm. It’s a strange thing to do, and some students think I’m mad.

Yoko
I repeat new words four or five times; it’s the only way to remember.

Jean Pierre
In English, you often write words in one way and say them in another; it’s very confusing.

4 Write SYN (synonym) or OPP (opposite) next to each pair of words.

- possible/impossible ___ OPP ___
- mad/crazy ___
- annoying/irritating ___
- necessary/unnecessary ___
- clear/confusing ___
- odd/strange ___

5 Complete the sentences.

- I’ve got two dictionaries. One of them is unnecessary.
- His explanation was very ____________ ; I didn’t understand anything.
- An old man in the street was very ____________ and gave me directions.
- It’s ____________ to fly round the world in five hours.
- My brother has got three jobs, and works every day of the year. I think he’s ____________.
- I was the ____________ person to come by car; the others took the bus or walked.
- Cookery books are useful, but they aren’t ____________.
- My cat is very ____________. He likes dog food more than cat food.
- He gave me very ____________ instructions to get to the house, so I had no problems.
- My sister talks all the time when I’m watching TV; it’s very ____________.

Glossary

helpful useful or giving help
annoying if something is annoying, it makes you a bit angry. syn irritating
clear easy to understand: syn confusing
impossible not possible: syn possible
necessary if something is necessary, you must have it or do it: syn unnecessary
strange unusual and perhaps not normal: syn odd
mad very unusual and not normal: syn crazy
it’s the only way there is no other way
71 I can use common adverbs

A Emphasis

| only       | We use only to say 'no more than'.  
|           | She was only 17 when she got married. (It's unusual to get married at 17.)  
|           | We can walk to the station - it's only five minutes. (Not 15 or 20.)  

| even      | We often use even before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe.  
|           | It's cold here, even in summer. (In most places, it's warm in the summer.)  
|           | My older brother is 1.90m, and my younger brother is even taller.  

| still     | We use still to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.  
|           | After 25 years, I still love my job. (I continue to love my job.)  
|           | Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're still in London.  

| especially (also particularly) | We use especially to say 'more than others' or 'more than usual'.  
|                                | We liked the towns in the south, especially Seville. (Seville was the best.)  
|                                | It's very hot here, especially in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.)  

1 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

- It's six kilometres to the next town. (only)  
- He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still)  
- It's nice there, in the morning. (especially)  
- There are three students in the class. (only)  
- He works on Sundays. (even)  
- She's at university. (still)  
- Rio is big, but São Paulo is bigger. (even)  

2 Circle the correct answer.

- The food is good there, only especially the fish.
  1 He was only 15 when he left school.
  2 I've seen the film five times and I even still enjoy it.
  3 The students are very nice, still particularly Marcel.
  4 There are even only three bridges like this in the world.
  5 It was cold yesterday but it's even still colder today.
  6 I study hard but my English is still only terrible.

3 Complete the sentences.

- He's ninety, but he ...th ... drives a car.
  1 ... four people came to the party; it was a bit sad.
  2 They've been in Hong Kong for ten years and they ... like living there.
  3 I love fish, ... salmon.
  4 He can't drive; he's ... 15.
  5 Jacqui's thin, but her sister is ... thinner.
  6 She enjoyed the book, ... the first part.
### B Degree

#### 4

**Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.**

- It was **extremely** interesting.
- This programme is **really/extremely** terrible.
- The weather was **very/absolutely** nice.
- Her new shoes are **very/absolutely** wonderful.
- My sister is a bit/a little untidy.
- I really/extremely want to go to Australia.
- She was **very/extremely** friendly.
- Their flat is a bit/quite nice.
- The hotel was **very/really** good.
- The boat is **extremely/really** enormous.

#### 5

**Rewrite the sentences. Use an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined word(s).**

- The film was a bit boring. **The film was a little boring.**
- The children were **really** fantastic. **The children were absolutely fantastic.**
- He was **very** good.
- The holiday was **absolutely** wonderful.
- She's a little unfriendly.
- The kitchen was **extremely** clean.
- The room was a bit small.
- Her new boyfriend is **really** awful.
- They're **really** nice people.
- The weather was **absolutely** terrible.

#### Spotlight: Graded and ungradable adjectives

- Graded adjectives: e.g., good, big, bad, nice, boring, young, tired, busy
- Ungradable adjectives: e.g., awful, perfect, terrible, wonderful, delicious, fantastic (= very, very good), enormous (= very, very big)
I can use irregular verbs

A Past tenses

Here are some common irregular verbs with their past tense forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

| be   | bring   | cost   | do    | drive  | felt   | find   | flew  | forget | gave   | go     | grow   | held   | kept   | knew   | lent   | lend   | put    | put    | read   | read   | ring   | ran    | stand  | stood  | swim   | swam   | taught | thought | took    | won    | wrote  |
|------|---------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| was/were | bought | did    | drove | felt   | found  | flew   | forgot| gave   | gave   | go     | grew   | held   | kept   | knew   | left   | lent   | put    | put    | read   | read   | ring   | ran    | stand  | stood  | swim   | swam   | taught | thought | took    | won    | wrote  |

1. Circle the right answers.
   ▶ Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'a' in the past tense.
     - did
     - bought
     - won
   1. Three verbs which have the same form in the infinitive and the past tense.
     - put
     - cost
     - run
   2. Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'o' in the past tense.
     - write
     - drive
     - give
   3. Three verbs which change the final 'd' to 't' in the past tense.
     - spend
     - stand
     - send
   4. Three verbs which change from 'o' to 'e' in the past tense.
     - know
     - hold
     - cost
   5. Three verbs which form the past tense with '-ought'.
     - teach
     - buy
     - think

2. Find eight more past tense verbs.
   - spoke
   - taught
   - won
   - found
   - swam
   - take
   - thought
   - spent

3. Complete the sentences using the correct verb in the past tense.
   ▶ This coat costs more than 500.
     1. I ___________ so tired, I ___________ for ten hours.
     2. We ___________ across the river.
     3. I ___________ her on my mobile.
     4. He ___________ the email but I ___________ to send it.
     5. They ___________ the film last night.
     6. She ___________ a new car yesterday.
     7. They ___________ up when he came in.
     8. We ___________ a taxi, then we ___________ to the cinema.

4. Test yourself. Cover the past tense forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past tense forms?
B Past participles

Here are the same irregular verbs as on page 175 with their past participle forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>brought</th>
<th>flown</th>
<th>kept</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>spent</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>taken</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>been</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>taken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>learned</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>space</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Eleven more of these verbs have the same form in the past tense and past participle, e.g. find, found, found. Write the past tense/past participle below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>find</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>bring</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>put</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>feel</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Write the past participle of the verbs below. What is similar about them?

- fly: flown
- forget: forgotten
- give: given
- see: seen

1 forget
2 give
3 see
4 fly
5 write
6 know
7 speak
8 drive
9 grow

7 Complete the questions with a past participle of a verb from the box. You will answer the questions in Exercise 8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>teach</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>win</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Have you ever ...

1 lent someone a lot of money?
2 read an English newspaper?
3 given a lesson?
4 forgotten any money?
5 sent an email to the wrong person?
6 driven on a boat?
7 spent in the Mediterranean Sea?
8 taken to a famous person?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.

8 Test yourself. Cover the past participle forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past participle forms?
I can use phrasal verbs

**A Meaning**

Most phrasal verbs have a verb (sit, stand, get, etc.) and a particle (up, on, off, etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give something up</td>
<td>He had to give up football.</td>
<td>stop doing something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on with someone</td>
<td>I like Sue; we get on well.</td>
<td>have a good relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>The plane couldn't take off.</td>
<td>leave the ground and start flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow up</td>
<td>When Ben grows up, he wants to be a vet.</td>
<td>change from a child to an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find out something</td>
<td>I must find out the times of the trains to Southampton.</td>
<td>find a fact or piece of information you need/want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out</td>
<td>Let's go out this evening.</td>
<td>leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. cinema, disco, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Circle the correct particle.**

1. I'd like to lie **down** for a few minutes.
2. Can we find **out/over** the cost of the tickets?
3. Where did she grow **out/up**?
4. He fell **over** when he ran down the road.
5. Do you want to go **out/off** this evening?
6. Pearl wants to give **on/up** her job.
7. Do you get **in/on** well with your parents?

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.**

1. Pasha doesn't want to go **out** this evening; she's tired.
2. I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find **out**.
3. Everyone stood **up** when he came into the room.
4. Maciej doesn't spend much time with his sister; they don't get **on** very well.
5. She sat **over** at the table and started eating.
6. The doctor told me to lie **down** on the bed.
7. I told my brother to give **up** smoking.
8. The plane took **off** half an hour late because of the bad weather.
9. She fell **over** in the street, but several people helped her.

**3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the phrasal verbs? Then, cover the meanings and examples and look at the phrasal verbs in the table. What does each verb mean?**
B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs don’t have an object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go up</td>
<td>The price of petrol will go up soon.</td>
<td>increase, become more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on with something</td>
<td>Can we carry on with the exercise?</td>
<td>continue with something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go back</td>
<td>She wants to go back to London.</td>
<td>return to a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>I always wake up at 7:00 a.m.</td>
<td>stop sleeping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other phrasal verbs need an object. It can go before or after the particle.

Take off your jacket.
Take your jacket off.
Could you turn on the light?
Could you turn the light on?
Could you turn it on? (sort ... turn on it.)
Put on your shoes.
Put your shoes on.
Could you turn it up? (sort ... turn up it.)

When the object is a pronoun (e.g. it, them) it must go before the particle.

Take it off. (sort: Take off it.)
Can I try them on? (sort: ... try on them.)

Change the bold words to it or them. Put the pronoun in the correct place.

- Look up the word. Lock it up. 4. Put those socks on.
- Look up both words. Lock them up. 5. Take off your shoes.
- 1. Take off your jacket. 6. Try on this shirt.
- 2. Try on these trousers. 7. Turn on the lights.
- 3. Turn on the TV. 8. Put your coat on.

Are the sentences correct or do they need the pronoun it? Where? Look at the examples.

- Could you turn on, please? Could you turn it on, please?
- Please sit down. connect
- Could I try on? connect
- 2. Do you want to go back? connect
- 3. You can take off if you’re hot.
- 4. Look up in the dictionary.
- 5. His salary will go up soon.
- 6. Do they want to stop or carry on?
- 7. Did you put on?
- 8. What time do you usually wake up?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. Where did you grow up?
2. How do you feel when you wake up?
3. How often do you go out in the evenings?
4. Do you get on well with people who live near you?
5. When you buy clothes, do you usually try them on first?
I can use prepositions of time

at
- a time
  - at six o'clock
  - at midnight
- a mealtime
  - at breakfast/lunch/dinner (time)

on
- a day
  - on Tuesday
  - on Friday evening
  - on Tuesdays = every Tuesday
- a date
  - on September 1st
  - on the sixth of May

in
- a part of a day
  - in the morning
  - in the afternoon
  - in the evening
- a season
  - in the spring/summer
  - in the autumn/winter
- a month, year, or century
  - in July/December
  - in 1990/2050
  - in the 21st century = 2000 – 2099

spotlight at

We also use at in these phrases:
- I relax at the weekend.
- Some doctors work at night. not in the night
- What are you doing at Christmas? at New Year?

1. Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.
   - in the spring/February: 15th/the evening
   - at teatime/2005/the weekend
   - in August/summer/Friday
   - on April/your birthday/Saturdays
   - at night/the morning/half past seven
   - in autumn/the 20th century/4.00
   - on midnight/midnight/2nd/Sunday afternoon
   - at breakfast/midday/the autumn
   - on winter/Christmas Day/the fifth of May
   - in the afternoon/dinner time/2008
   - at New Year/the evening/six o'clock

2. Write the correct preposition in each space.

   We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left on Thursday morning (1) ______ about nine, and got there (2) ______ lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) ______ the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) ______ spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) ______ Friday we had lunch with an old friend who I met at university (6) ______ 1997. Then (7) ______ the evening, we went to a restaurant, and got home (8) ______ midnight. (9) ______ the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We’d like to go back for the Brighton Festival which starts (10) ______ 6 May.

3. ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

   When do you ...
   1. get up? ____________________________
   2. study English? ____________________________
   3. go swimming? ____________________________
   4. watch TV? ____________________________
   5. go to sleep? ____________________________

   When was the last time you ...
   6. saw your family? ____________________________
   7. went on holiday? ____________________________
   8. went to the mountains? ____________________________
   9. went to bed very late? ____________________________
   10. went to a party? ____________________________

180 LANGUAGE
75 I can use time words and phrases

A Past, present and future

Look at the diary and read the sentences below. It’s midday on Thursday, 11 April.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APRIL</th>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>Mon 15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tue</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>London - dinner with Scott 8.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wed</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>9.00 - 10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thur</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Dr. Scott 10.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fri</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Theatre 8.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sat</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Pete’s birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Mum and Dad for lunch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I was in Moscow last week.
I saw Jon and Trish three days ago.
I had lunch with Liz yesterday.
I went out with Brian last night.
I’m going to the cinema this evening.
I’ve got a meeting tomorrow morning.
I’m going to stay at Gary’s this weekend.
Then I’m in London for three days next week.
I have a doctor’s appointment next Thursday.
I’m seeing my parents in ten days’ time.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- I was in Moscow last week.    T
- I got back from Moscow four days ago.    
- I saw Jon and Trish this week.    
- I paid the phone bill three days ago.    
- I met Brian yesterday.    
- I was in London last week.    
- I’m going to the cinema this afternoon.    
- I’m going out tomorrow evening.    
- I’m seeing Scott in four days’ time.    
- I’m seeing the doctor in a week’s time.    
- I’m going to the theatre next Friday.    

2 Complete the sentences.

- We saw them yesterday evening.    
- She saw Paul about three days ago.    
- I wrote Pete’s birthday in my.    
- She rang me at 10 o’clock last night.    
- He wants to come in a week’s time.    
- She can’t come. She’s got a dentist’s appointment.    
- I’m going to Italy next week.    

3 Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.

- I had lunch with Liz a week ago.
-       on Thursday evening.
-       five days ago.
-       last weekend.
-       tomorrow morning.
-       in three days’ time.
-       this weekend.
B Words and phrases often confused

**before/after**

![Images showing people doing different activities at different times]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>Shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>Lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.00</td>
<td>Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.00</td>
<td>Work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**at the moment/in a minute**

I'm very busy **at the moment**. = I'm very busy now, wrt this moment
I'll speak to you **in a minute**. = I'll speak to you one or two minutes from now.

**soon/later**

I'm going home **soon**. = I'm going home in a short time from now.
Can I talk to you **later**? = Can I talk to you in the future but not now?

**until**

We worked **until** ten o'clock = We stopped work at 10:00.
I want to **stay here until** July = I don't want to go before July.

**for/since**

I moved to this house. Sarah was born. = Sarah is now five years old.
I've lived here **since** Sarah was born. I've lived here **for** five years.

4 Circle the correct answer.

- Dinner will be ready **after** a minute.
- I had a shower **before**/after I went to bed.
- We went home **before**/after work and watched TV.
- I usually work **until**/for one o'clock, and then have a sandwich.
- She's in the library **at**/in the moment.
- I haven't seen her **for**/since last week.
- I'm very busy this morning. Can I phone you **later**/soon?
- She has worked here **for**/since seven years.
- The taxi will be here **later**/soon. Are you ready?

5 Complete the sentences. Use **soon**, **later**, **before**, **at**, **in**, **until**, **for** or **since**.

- I had a rest **after** lunch.
- She waited **until** 7:00, then went home.
- He's been here **since** three weeks.
- I'm getting tired. Can we go home **soon**?
- Can you help me? = Yes, I'll be with you **for** a minute.
- What are you doing **at** the moment?
- We haven't seen them **since** last summer.
- I wrote the email **after** I went out.
- I'm busy tomorrow. Can we go out **later** this week?

6 Translate the words in **bold** in this unit into your own language.
I can use prepositions of place and movement

**A in, at, on**

- **at** a position, for example a place to meet or where something happens
  - Let’s meet at the bank/at the bus stop.
  - I saw him at the match/at the party
  - at home/at work/at school.

- **in** a three-dimensional space
  - in a box, a cupboard
  - in a room, an office, a flat
  - in a garden, a park

- **on** a line
  - on the road, the coast, the river

- **on a surface**
  - on the table, the wall
  - on the first floor

- **in** a big area
  - in a village/town/city
  - in the countryside
  - in London/Spain/Asia/the world

- **in or on?**
  - He’s in the river.
  - She’s on the river.

1. Circle the correct preposition.
   - I live **in/on** Canada.
   - She’s not **in/on** her office.
   - The photos are **in/on** the wall.
   - We met **in/at** a golf match.
   - We stayed **in/on** a lovely village.
   - She’s swimming **in/on** the pool.
   - Barcelona is **in/on** the coast.
   - We live **at/in** the countryside.
   - There are too many cars **in/on** the road.
   - Dinner is **on/at** the table.
   - They’re sitting **in/at** the garden.
   - The books are **on/in** the table.
   - I saw her **in/at** the bus stop.
   - The number is **in/on** the door.
   - I spoke to her **in/at** the party.

2. Complete the questions with **in**, **on**, or **at**.

   - **Which country do you live in?**
   - Do you live **in** a village, a town, or a city?
   - Do you live **in** a flat or a house?
   - Is your town **in** a river?
   - **Which floor is your bedroom?**
   - Do you like walking **in** the countryside?
   - Are you learning English **in** school, **at** work, or **in** an English-speaking country?

3. **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.
B Other prepositions

The people are in front of the garage.
The postman is between mum and dad.
The adults are behind the children.
The tree is near the house.

The office is above the garage.
The garage is below the office.
The seat is next to the bus stop.
The bus stop is opposite the garage.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

1 The tree's opposite the house. __ F __
2 The blue car's near the house. ___ __
3 The big window is above the door. ___ __
4 The people are opposite the garage. ___ __
5 The postman's next to mum. ___ __

5 The seat's between the house and the tree. ___ __
6 The children are behind mum and dad. ___ __
7 The girl's in front of the postman. ___ __
8 The front door's below the big window. ___ __
9 The bus stop's next to the green car. ___ __

5 Complete the sentences.

1 The tree's _______ the blue car.
2 The bus stop is _______ the seat.
3 The blue car is _______ the tree.
4 The boy's standing _______ dad.
5 The green car's _______ the bus stop.

5 The bus stop is _______ the green car
6 The seat is _______ the garage.
7 The postman's _______ dad.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What's opposite the building where you live? __________________________
2 What's behind your building? ________________________________
3 What's next to it? ________________________________
4 Are there any shops near it? ________________________________
5 What's above your living room? ________________________________
6 What's below your bedroom? ________________________________

7 Test yourself. Cover the sentences and look at the picture.
What can you say about ... the people? the postman? the office? the garage?
the seat? the bus stop?
C Prepositions of movement

- go out of
- go into
- go across
- go down
- go up
- go along
- go past the church
- go through
- go under
- go over

Circle the correct word.
1. Don’t run down the [church].
2. Walk under the [field].
3. Drive along the [city/motorway].
4. Don’t go across the [river/gate].
5. Go into the [beach/shop].
6. I ran past the [bus stop/countryside].
7. Go up the [floor/mountain].
8. Don’t run down the [stairs/bridge].
9. Walk out of the [building/hill].
10. We flew over the [skyfield].

Complete 1–10 with a preposition in each sentence.

1. Go straight on, [along] this road.
2. We went [across] the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
3. They drove [up] the hill to look at the view from the top.
4. We walked [over] the river for about thirty minutes, then walked back.
5. We drove [into] a restaurant on the way to the station.
6. He came [under] the door and fell over; it was very funny.
7. I came [over] the bank and saw the accident.
8. We went [up] the hill, into the valley below.
9. The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens and he just ran [across] the road.
10. We swam [under] the bridge, so they couldn’t see us.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the prepositions?
77  I can use link words (1)

A  And, also, too, as well

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The centre is dirty and very noisy.</th>
<th>And links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The centre is dirty. and it's also very expensive. and it also costs a lot to live there.</td>
<td>Also goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. be, can, but before the main verb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The centre is dirty. and it's very expensive. and it costs a lot to live there. too. as well.</td>
<td>Too and as well go at the end of the sentence. Too and as well are more informal than also.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1  Are also, too or as well in the correct positions? Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗).

- You need a dictionary, and as well a grammar book is useful.  ✓
- The house is beautiful, and it's near the park also.  
- He speaks German, and he understands too Greek.  
- We went out for dinner and Lucy came as well.  
- I cleaned the house and washed also the car.  
- She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Ravenna too.  
- We've got a big garden and as well a park near the house.  

2  Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter
  The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.

- 1 yoghurt / also / like / and I
  I often eat ice cream.

- 2 but I go / too / watching TV / to the cinema a lot
  I enjoy watching TV.

- 3 German / as well / understand / I can / and
  I can speak English.

- 4 also / but I / music / of books / listen to
  I read a lot.

- 5 and / on TV / I watch it / as well / football
  I play football.

3  ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false.

- The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.  False
### Reason and result

**Why did you go into the café?**

| I went into the café because it was raining. | because (of) comes before the reason  
| I went into the café because of the rain. | because + clause  
| because of + noun |

| I went into the café (in order) to get out of the rain.  
= I went into the café because it was raining.  
= I went into the café because it was raining.  |
| (in order) to comes before the reason  
| (in order) to + verb |

| It was raining, so I went into the café.  
= I went into the café because it was raining.  |
| so comes before the result  
| so + clause  
| There is usually a comma (,) before so. |

---

**Circle the correct word.**

1. I took my umbrella **because** to it was raining.
2. I stayed at home **because** of the weather.
3. We went to Paris **so** to see a friend.
4. I couldn't go out **because** of I had to study.
5. It was my birthday, **so** **because** we had a party.
6. She went to the market **to** **because** get a book.
7. She lost her passport, **so** **because** she couldn't go to China.

---

**Write because, because of, so, or to.**

1. The were late **because of** the traffic.
2. I'm going to the chemist's __________ get some aspirins.
3. It was a nice day, __________ we went out.
4. I bought the house __________ the beautiful view.
5. I don't go to the theatre very often __________ it's too expensive.
6. I'm going out now, __________ I'll phone you tomorrow.
7. She went to the centre __________ meet her friend.
8. I think he married her __________ her money.
9. Are you studying English __________ get a better job?
78 I can use link words (2)

A When and if (future)

I'll post the letter when I go out. (I'm sure I'm going out later.)
I'll post the letter if I go out. (I'm not sure I'm going out later.)

The verb after when or if is usually in the present simple, not the will form.
not I'll post the letter when I will go out.

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 I'll tell her if I see her. = I'm sure not sure that I'll see her.
   1 He'll be OK when he sees her. = He's sure not sure that he'll see her.
   2 If I go to Beijing, I'll email you. = I'm sure not sure that I'll go to Beijing.
   3 I'll ring you if I can come. = I'm sure not sure that I can come.
   4 He'll feel better when he gets home. = It's sure not sure that he's going home.
   5 When we get on the train, we'll ring you. = It's sure not sure that we'll get on the train.
   6 You'll find the museum if you take a map. = It's sure not sure that you'll take a map.

2 Complete the sentences with if or when.

1 If you miss the seven o'clock train, you'll have to walk.
2 It's cold tonight, we'll have soup.
3 I'm 30, I'll have a party.
4 We'll leave it stops raining.
5 He'll do he wakes up tomorrow.
6 You lose your key, you can phone me.

B When and while

When and while both mean 'in that period of time'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When</th>
<th>while</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I phoned the doctor when I was on holiday.</td>
<td>I was on holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phoned the doctor</td>
<td>= In a period when I was on holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When</th>
<th>while</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I gave Jack the money when he got home.</td>
<td>he got home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gave him the money</td>
<td>= at the time I met him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.
   ► The lesson started when/while the students set down.
   1 Come and see me while/when you arrive.
   2 I’ll help with the children while/when you get home.
   3 She saw the accident while/when she was shopping.
   4 She met Mr Jacks while/when she got to the station.
   5 I’ll wash the car while/when you’re at work.
   6 Shall we go out when/while it stops raining?

4 A sequence of actions...

... and we had a really nice week. Firstly, we spent a few days in Budapest, then we went to Vienna. Afterwards, we went on a tour of the Lakes and stayed in Salzburg for a couple of nights.

5 Complete the texts with link words. Don’t use the same word twice.
   A For this job, firstly, you have to fill in a form. (1) __________________, you have to go and talk to the boss. (2) __________________, you meet other people who work in the company. (3) __________________, you have to do a written test.
   B (4) __________________, I checked the train times on the internet, and (5) __________________, I looked at the flights to see if they were cheaper.

6 Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.
   ► I checked the answers. / I did all the grammar exercises.
      Firstly, I did all the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.
      1 She made the pasta sauce. / She boiled the pasta. / She added the sauce to the pasta.
   2 I did a Masters degree. / I did a degree in history. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
      3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a few days. / We started our holiday in Heidelberg.
   4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.

6 ABOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.
   ► First of all, I
79 I can use ‘have’ and ‘have got’

A Have and have got

| My brother has/have got a house in the country. | If you have/have got something, it is yours; it belongs to you. |
| His wife has/have got an art studio there.       |                                                         |
| She has/have got a bad cold at the moment.       | Use have/have got to describe illness.                   |
| They have/have got two young daughters.          | Use have/have got to describe relationships.             |
| Both girls have/have got blonde hair.            | Use have/have got to describe appearance.                |

**spotlight** have and have got

Have is a full verb. Use do, does and did in questions, short answers and negatives.

**Do** they have a car? — Yes, they do. I didn’t have a job last year.

In negatives and questions, have got is more common than have with do. We don’t use have got in short answers. Have they got a car? He hasn’t got a bike. He doesn’t have a bike. (less common)

1 Change have to the correct form of have got in each sentence.

   ▶ I have an old car. I’ve got an old car.
   1 She has blue eyes.
   2 They have a small dog.
   3 I don’t have a mobile phone.
   4 He doesn’t have any money.
   5 Do you have any sisters?
   6 Does she have a flat in town?

2 Correct the mistakes.

   ▶ He have a car. He’s got a car. He has a car.
   1 She got any children?
   2 They has got a lovely garden.
   3 Have she got long hair?
   4 My sister no have a boyfriend.
   5 Have you a computer?
   6 We don’t got any friends here.

3 Complete the questions.

   ▶ Have you got a car?
   1 Have you _______ a bike?
   2 _______ you have a computer?
   3 _______ your parents got a dog?
   4 _______ you got an English dictionary?
   5 _______ you have any English-speaking friends? If so, who are they?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
**B Have + noun**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have breakfast/lunch/dinner</th>
<th>We had lunch in a pizzeria.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have a wash/a shower/a bath</td>
<td>I had a quick shower before I left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a drink/something to eat</td>
<td>I had a drink with Joe last night. Let's have something to eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a swim/a walk/a run</td>
<td>I didn't have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day</td>
<td>We had a great time in Kyoto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey</td>
<td>Have a nice weekend. Yeah, you too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a break</td>
<td>Let's have a break for ten minutes. I'm going to have a rest this weekend.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can't use *have got* in these expressions. *not have a got a break.*

### 5. Make four more groups of phrases with *have* from the words below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>swim</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>bath</th>
<th>journey</th>
<th>rest</th>
<th>lunch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th>Group 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6. Complete the postcard.

Dear Carla,

We're having a great time here in Parati. Yesterday we had a CD round the town and bought a few things. In the evening we had a CD barbecue in the bar you recommended. Afterwards, we had CD in a nice fish restaurant. We're going to have a CD in the sea this morning, then maybe do some more shopping this afternoon. I think we'll have a CD see you on Monday. See you soon.

Love, Nicky

### 7. Complete the sentences.

1. I got up late and didn't have any
2. Would you like to have something to______?
3. I worked hard today, so I'm going to have a ______ this evening.
4. We have a twenty-minute ________ between the lessons.
5. All the buses were late this morning, so I had a bad ________ to work.
6. Did you have a good ________ in London yesterday?
7. Have a nice ________ in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
8. I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a ________.
### 80 I can use ‘get’

**get**

- arrive at: **We get to London at 6.00.**
- receive: **I didn’t get a visa.**
- become: **It’s getting hot in here.**
- buy: **I got this watch last week.**
- obtain: **I have to get a job.**
- travel by: **Let’s get the bus.**

**spotlight get**

Get is a very common verb in spoken English. It has many meanings, and you need to write down new examples when you meet them. We don’t use it a lot in formal written English.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of get. You will complete column 3 in <strong>Exercise 2.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He becomes angry if you’re late.</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Did you receive my message?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I must buy some new clothes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 We arrived home late last night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 It’s becoming cold.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I received three letters today.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Where did you buy that bag?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 He needs to obtain a job.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Do you want to travel by train?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>Cover sentences 1 – 8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does get mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3</th>
<th>Complete the sentences in a logical way, using get.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Do you want to walk or get the train?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 What time did you get home?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Those shoes are lovely. Where did you get them?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Could you close the window? It’s getting cold.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I must go now, it’s getting late.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 She sent me an email but I didn’t get it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I need a map of the town centre. Where can I get one?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I’m going to get a taxi.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Review: Language

Unit 70

1 Describe each picture with an adjective.

1 _______  2 _______  3 _______  4 _______  5 _______

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in grey spell out another word. What is it?

ONLY

1 _______  2 _______  3 _______

4 _______  5 _______

6 _______  7 _______  8 _______

There is no other. Only
1 Giving help. _______
2 Opposite of unusual. _______
3 Opposite of useful. _______
4 Synonym of odd. _______
5 Opposite of quiet. _______
6 Not important; you don’t need it. _______
7 Opposite of confusing. _______
8 Synonym of irritating. _______

Unit 71

1 Add one word from the box to the correct place in each sentence.

even  absolutely still quite
only especially a bit

1 I play tennis a lot in the summer.
   especially

2 We couldn’t play the match with ten players.

3 He lives in Italy, but speaks English most of the time.

4 Max didn’t like the film, but I thought it was good.

5 The last film was good, but this is better.

6 My English is getting better.

2 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

There are too many cars on the roads, but I still drive to work _______

1 I go swimming, even _______

2 It was August, but the weather was really _______

3 The service is a bit _______ but the food is really good.

4 She can’t drive; she’s only _______

5 By the end of the evening I was quite _______

6 I like her new boyfriend; he’s extremely _______
Unit 72

Complete the crossword.

Across
3 She hasn't _______ to the dentist for a year.
4 Have you _______ that book?
6 They _______ the bus to work this morning.
9 I _______ the books on the shelf.
11 I _______ these keys on the floor. Are they yours?
13 He _______ for eight hours last night.
14 I _______ her an email yesterday.
15 He _______ to post the letter.

Down
1 We _______ to the cinema on Saturday.
2 Have you _______ his new film?
3 She _______ some new jeans at the weekend.
5 Have you _______ your homework?
7 How long have you _______ her?
8 He _______ ten kilometres this morning.
10 I _______ the book was very good.
12 She _______ home at 8 o'clock this morning.
13 We _______ on the floor because there were no chairs.
14 I _______ all my money on holiday.

Unit 73

1 Make sentences from the words.

► morning / I woke / this / early / up
   I woke up early this morning.
1 in / grew / I up / a / village
2 you / down / why / sit / don't / ?
3 find / I / address / out / must / their
4 over / street / the / fell in / she
5 night / you / out / last / did / go / ?
6 light / on / could / the / you / turn / ?
7 look / in / up / dictionary / it / your
8 them / / try / could / on / ?
2 Change the underlined words for a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

- Can I remove my jacket?  \textit{take off}
- I stopped smoking last year.  \textit{stop}
- The price of flats is \textit{increasing} all the time.  \textit{rising}
- She lives in Paris but wants to \textit{return} to Rome.  \textit{go back to}
- The plane couldn’t \textit{leave} the ground and start \textit{flying}.  \textit{take off}
- We have a good \textit{relationship}.  \textit{connection}
- When I finish this I can \textit{continue} with Exercise 2.

Unit 74

Put the words and phrases in the correct place in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the morning</th>
<th>Monday morning</th>
<th>December</th>
<th>my birthday</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>the sixth of March</td>
<td>half past five</td>
<td>the afternoon</td>
<td>the 21st century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>three o'clock</td>
<td>the weekend</td>
<td>Friday evening</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In</th>
<th>At</th>
<th>On</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{the morning}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 75

1 Read the text, then complete the sentences.

Seven years ago I left California and went to live in Spain. I already spoke Spanish very well, and I got a job as a receptionist in a tourist hotel near Malaga. I stayed in one of the rooms and looked for somewhere to live. I found a nice apartment near the town and I worked at the hotel for two years. After that I got a similar job, this time in a large hotel on the Algarve in the south of Portugal. I met a Spanish man at the hotel - he also worked there - and six months later we got married. We bought a small house near the hotel and one month ago I found out that we’re going to have a baby. We are now preparing a room for him or her.

- I already spoke Spanish before I went to live in Spain.  \textit{before}
- I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I \textit{worked in Portugal for}
- I met a Spanish man after I \textit{married}
- I’ve lived in the house I bought since I \textit{married}
- I’ve lived in Portugal for \textit{seven years}
- Soon I’m going to \textit{go back to Spain}
- At the moment we’re \textit{expecting a baby}
2 Put the phrases in the correct place on the line.

last night    tomorrow evening    today    last week    next Monday    in ten days' time
yesterday afternoon    this evening    tomorrow morning    two days ago

1 ______ 2 ______ 3 ______ 4 ______ 5 ______ 6 ______ 7 ______ 8 ______ 9 ______
Past ← 4 Today ← Present 5 Future →

Unit 76

1 Put the letters in order to make prepositions.
1 wolbe __________ 2 revo __________ 3 stap __________ 4 rean __________ 5 wodn __________
6 scoras __________ 7 tenx ot __________ 8 toin __________ 9 tou fo __________
10 soltepo __________ 11 tebnewe __________ 12 gorhhtu __________

2 Which words from Exercise 1 can go in sentences 1 and 2 below?
1 I live ______ Jack.
2 He ran ______ the park.

3 Write the words in the correct columns.

the world    school    the table    my town    the wall    home    Germany
the coast    a football match    work    the countryside    the second floor    the bedroom

In
At
On

Unit 77

1 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.
1 We went to Rio last year because ______
2 We decided to go in September because of ______
3 My mother decided to come and ______
4 Our Brazilian friends weren't working, so ______
5 They came to the airport to ______
6 We had a week in Rio, and ______
7 We drove to São Paulo in order to ______
8 The food was great, and ______
9 We are still many things to see, so ______

a we loved the street life too.
b I think we'll go back next year.
c we wanted to visit some friends.
d see the countryside.
e we spent a lot of time together.
f we went to São Paulo as well.
g the weather; it's cooler then.
h meet us.
i we also took her sister.
2 Complete the text with a link word/phrase from the box.

because too ✓ as well because of also to so

My cousin, Peter, did French at university, and he studied a little Chinese too.
He first became interested in the language because of his girlfriend, Hua. She’s half
Chinese, but she has lived in Britain for most of her life. Peter moved to Beijing two years ago
(2) ____________ study Chinese. Hua went there last year and got a job in a bank, and he
(3) ____________ got a job, teaching English. They loved living there because the
people were so friendly and life was great. Last month, Hua found a new job in Hong Kong,
(5) ____________ Peter decided to leave China and go there (6) ____________ . He’s sad
about leaving China, but I’m sure he’ll go back and see his friends in the future.

Unit 78

1 Write sentences using phrases from each column.

If When While
you get to the airport, ✓
you’re travelling on a long flight,
you can choose your seat on the plane,
you are waiting for the flight,
you get off,
you feel ill during the flight,
you lose your passport on holiday.
tell the airline staff.
go to the embassy.
sit near the front where it’s quiet.
sit in the departure lounge.
don’t leave anything on the plane.
always wear comfortable clothes.
go to the check-in desk.
✓

► When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk.
1
2
3
4
5
6

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

after that first of all finally while if then when ✓

► When __________, I’m getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) __________ I have a shower. And
(2) __________ I’m in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my hair,
too. (3) __________ I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really loves
that!) (4) __________, I decide what to wear: usually a shirt and some casual trousers. And then
(5) __________, I look in the mirror before I go out to see (6) __________ everything’s OK. I want to
look my best!
Unit 79

1 Circle the correct word or phrase.
   ► What time do you have lunch?
   1 Did you have/had a wash before dinner?
   2 We always have a/the swim in the lake in the afternoon.
   3 Have you got/Did you have a good weekend?
   4 Do/Have you got any children?
   5 We hadn’t/didn’t have the same office last year.
   6 We had a great time/weather in Italy last summer.
   7 Can I have rest/a rest? I’m really tired.
   8 I had/ was hungry, so I had/had got dinner.

2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.
   ► It was sunny at midday, so we had/in the garden. lunch
   1 We had a for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
   2 We had something eat at the beach.
   3 My sister got blonde hair.
   4 I was hot, so I had a before dinner.
   5 We had a day at work. I hate my job!
   6 Have a lovely in the Caribbean!
   7 I’d like to go on holiday, but I don’t any money.
   8 On Sunday, we just had a and did nothing.

Unit 80

1 What meaning does the verb get have in each sentence? Write the number of the sentence next to the correct verb.

| arrive | obtain | buy | 1 | travel by | receive | become |

   1 Where do you get your fruit and vegetables?
   2 Are you trying to get a new job?
   3 Do you get tired in hot weather?
   4 How many text messages do you get every day?
   5 Are you getting taller?
   6 What did you get for your last birthday?
   7 Where did you get the shoes you’re wearing?
   8 How often do you get the train to school or work?
   9 What time did you get home last night?

2 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 1, or ask another student.
Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

1 Verbs and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>advice, actress</td>
<td>move</td>
<td>movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>actor, actress</td>
<td>own</td>
<td>owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertise</td>
<td>advert/advertisement</td>
<td>park</td>
<td>parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>agreement</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologise</td>
<td>apology</td>
<td>perform</td>
<td>performance, performer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>arrangement</td>
<td>permit</td>
<td>permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach</td>
<td>attachment</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>print</td>
<td>printer, printout, printing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe</td>
<td>belief</td>
<td>pronounce</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>building, builder</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>reading, reader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>choice</td>
<td>recommend</td>
<td>recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb</td>
<td>climbing</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect</td>
<td>collection</td>
<td>report</td>
<td>report, reporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compose</td>
<td>composer</td>
<td>reserve</td>
<td>reservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>dance, dancing, dancer</td>
<td>respond</td>
<td>response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver</td>
<td>delivery</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>riding, rider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart</td>
<td>departure</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>run, runner, running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design</td>
<td>designer</td>
<td>serve</td>
<td>service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disagree</td>
<td>disagreement</td>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shooting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>discussion</td>
<td>sign</td>
<td>signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drawing</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>singer, singing, song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>driver, driving</td>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>smoke, smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td>education</td>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter</td>
<td>entrance, entry</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>study, student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td>exam/examination</td>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>suggestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>explanation</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>failure</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>teacher, teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>feeling</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>thinking, thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flight, flying</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>travelling, travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>growth</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walk, walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hate</td>
<td>hatred</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>wash, washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>hearing</td>
<td>weigh</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insure</td>
<td>insurance</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>winner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td>invitation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
<td>manager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Task yourself:** Cover one column and look at the other. Can you remember the other part of speech?
### Adjectives and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>anger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able, unable</td>
<td>ability, inability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attractive</td>
<td>attraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloudy</td>
<td>cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable,</td>
<td>comfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncomfortable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eastern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electric, electrical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited, exciting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foggy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendly, unfriendly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geographical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky, unlucky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy, unhappy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healthy, unhealthy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>historic, historical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>icy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industrial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind, kind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistaken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>northern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible, impossible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peaceful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scientific</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>southern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunny</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>western</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wooden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>madness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>north</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possibility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics, politician</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science, scientist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>south</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strength</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun, sunshine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weakness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>west</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash</td>
<td>divorce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>download</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge</td>
<td>drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chat</td>
<td>email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy</td>
<td>hate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post</td>
<td>jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull</td>
<td>label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push</td>
<td>laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queue</td>
<td>look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td>love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repair</td>
<td>mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reply</td>
<td>matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request</td>
<td>microwave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>research</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shave</td>
<td>snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tour</td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td>visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waste</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confusion</td>
<td>confuse</td>
<td>confusing, confused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>death</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employment</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>employed, unemployed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoyment</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>enjoyable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excitement</td>
<td>excite</td>
<td>exciting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heating</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td>helpful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>interested, interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>locate</td>
<td>known, unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marriage</td>
<td>marry/get married</td>
<td>located</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organization</td>
<td>organize</td>
<td>married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td>pollute</td>
<td>organized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rent</td>
<td>rent</td>
<td>polluted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retirement</td>
<td>retire</td>
<td>rented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>retired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speaking</td>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>surprised, surprising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>worry</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing</td>
<td>worried</td>
<td>worrying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Verbs and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annoy</td>
<td>annoyed, annoying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil</td>
<td>boiled, boiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bore</td>
<td>bored, boring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>frozen, freezing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frighten</td>
<td>frightened, frightening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>include</td>
<td>include</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irritate</td>
<td>irritated, irritating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relax</td>
<td>relaxed, relaxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidy</td>
<td>tidy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire</td>
<td>tired, tiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>wake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VOCABULARY BUILDING 201
### Common irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overtake</td>
<td>overtook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>shook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake (up)</td>
<td>woke (up)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

202 COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS
Answer key
Answer key

Unit 1
1 two hundred
2 three hundred and forty
3 twenty-two
4 42,500
5 one thousand two hundred
6 two thousand three hundred and fifty
2 1 eight
2 twenty
3 sixty-seven
4 fifty
5 an one hundred and nineteen
6 two hundred and forty-four
7 an one thousand
8 five thousand and fifty-six
9 eleven thousand three hundred and one
3 1 about an one hundred euros
2 about ten students
3 about thirty years
4 about five hundred
5 about two thousand
6 about eighty people
7 about two hundred and fifty thousand
8 about an one million

Unit 2
1 1 nine fifteen
2 ten twenty-five
3 three thirty-five
4 eleven forty-five
5 three forty-five
6 seven twenty
7 two thirty
8 four forty
2 1 quarter past seven
2 half past nine
3 twenty-five to twelve
4 ten to four
5 twenty-five past eight
6 three minutes past one
7 quarter to three
8 seventeen minutes past four
4 1 S 2 D 3 G 4 S 5 6 D 7 S 8 S
5 Answers from a British person
1 They open at nine a.m.
2 No, they don’t.
3 They close at half past five in the afternoon, and at seven p.m. on Thursdays.
4 They open at about eleven in the morning.
5 They close at different times. Some close at about midnight.
6 They open at nine a.m. and close at half past five in the afternoon.

Unit 3
1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
2 1 Tuesday
2 September
3 summer
4 December
5 Saturday
6 April
7 February
8 winter
9 Thursday
10 August
3 Answers from a British person
1 September.
2 I like spring because it’s light and the trees and plants start to grow.
3 Friday, because it’s nearly the weekend.
4 I go and see my family and we have a big lunch together.
5 May 1st is a public holiday for workers, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
5 1 third
2 twentieth
3 fifth
4 first
5 eighth
6 sixteenth
7 fourteenth
8 thirteenth
9 second
10 thirteenth

ANSWER KEY 205
8 November the thirtieth. on The thirtieth of November.
9 The twenty-second of April. on April the twenty-second.
10 Twenty fifteen. on Two thousand and fifteen.
11 Your own answer
12 Your own answer

Unit 4

1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F
2 1 Britain 6 Africa
2 Europe 7 The Middle East
3 Central 8 Asia
4 Far 9 Australasia
5 South

3 1 France, French
2 Germany, German
3 Spain, Spanish
4 Portugal, Portuguese
5 Italy, Italian
6 The Czech Republic, Czech
7 Poland, Polish
8 Hungary, Hungarian
9 Russia, Russian
10 Greece, Greek
11 Turkey, Turkish
4 -ian: Russian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Brazilian, Argentinian, Indian, Canadian, Australian
-ish: British, Spanish, Turkish, Polish, English
-an: American, German, Korean, Mexican

Unit 5

1 1 X 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 X 10 X 11 X 12 X
2 1 board pen 4 pencil sharpener
2 cassette player 5 piece of paper
3 notepad 6 CD player
3 Answers from an Argentinian person
I've got a rubber. I haven't got a rubber.
I've got a desk. I haven't got a desk.
I've got a table. I haven't got a table.
I haven't got a board. I haven't got a cassette player.

Unit 6

1 1 indefinite 5 past participle
2 noun 6 plural
3 preposition 7 verbs
4 an irregular 8 adverbs

2 1 I 7 Today/quickly
2 lessons 8 asked
3 young 9 spoke
4 a 10 class
5 from/in 11 I think he's in the wrong class.
6 the

Unit 7

1 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 e
2 1 called 5 right/correct
2 pronounce 6 opposite
3 How do 7 does
4 between 8 explain

Unit 8

1 1 What do you do in your country?
2 Where do you come from?
3 Could I have your address?
4 What's your family name?
5 What's your postcode?
6 How old are your children?
7 Have you got any children?
8 What's your first name?
2 1 family 5 could/can
2 first 6 postcode
3 from 7 do
4 Whereabouts? 8 married
Where exactly? 9 old
3 Answers from a Greek person
1 Anna 5 11363
2 Greece 6 I'm a teacher.
3 Athens 7 No, I'm single.
4 I Kipseli 8 I'm 30.
11363 Athens Greece

Unit 9

1 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 F
10 F 11 F 12 T
2 Your own answers

Unit 10

1 1 daughter 6 husband
2 nephew 7 grandmother
3 niece 8 uncle
4 sister-in-law 9 aunt
5 cousin 10 relatives
2 1 sister 7 grandmother
2 wife 8 granddaughter
3 niece 9 cousin
4 relative 10 parent
5 daughter 11 aunt
6 sister-in-law

4 Your own answers
5 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 T

206 ANSWER KEY
6 1. I was born in 1989.
2. We spend a lot of time together.
3. My girlfriend is older than me.
4. There are six of us in my family.
5. I am the youngest in my family.
6. I've got an older/younger brother and a younger/older sister.

7. Answers from a Turkish person
   1. There are six people in my family.
   2. 1963.
   3. I've got one sister and two brothers. My sister's older than me and my two brothers are younger than me.
   4. I spend a lot of time with my sister because she's fun and she lives near me.
   5. No. We all live in our own houses but very close to each other.

Unit 11

1. lie down 5. sit down
2. fall over 6. get on
3. ride 7. run
4. climb 8. stand up

2. stand 5. jumped
2. walk 7. rode
3. climb 8. ran, fell
4. dance 9. got, got
5. lie

4. 1. carry 5. touch 9. hold
2. turn off 6. drop 10. push
3. put down 7. pick up 11. shut
4. close 8. break 12. open

5. 1. touch a bicycle 1, push a bicycle 2
2. pick up a TV 2, turn on a TV 1
3. break a bottle 1, open a bottle 2
4. pull your hair 1, touch your hair 1
5. turn off a radio 1, hold a radio 1
6. drop a ruler 1, break a ruler 2
7. carry a door 2, close a door 1
8. pick up a baby 2, hold a baby 2

Unit 12

1 T F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 T
10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F

1. wrist 5. shoulder
2. stomach 6. eyes
3. neck 7. bottom
4. finger

3. 1. chin 6. face
2. stomach 7. nose
3. chest 8. bottom
4. tooth/teeth 9. waist
5. back

Unit 13

1. lie down 5. sit down
2. fall over 6. get on
3. ride 7. run
4. climb 8. stand up

2. stand 5. jumped
2. walk 7. rode
3. climb 8. ran, fell
4. dance 9. got, got
5. lie

4. 1. carry 5. touch 9. hold
2. turn off 6. drop 10. push
3. put down 7. pick up 11. shut
4. close 8. break 12. open

5. 1. medium-length, short
2. blonde, black, brown, grey
3. straight, wavy, curly
4. beard, moustache
5. brown

6. Answers from a German person
   1. It's short.
   2. It's red.
   3. It's straight.
   4. I've got a beard.
   5. No, my eyes are blue.

7. 1 b 2 e 3 i 4 h 5 c 6 f 7 a 8 g

8. Answers from an Argentinian person
   1. Pablo (my nephew).
   2. Ester (my mother).
   3. Ezequiel (my nephew).
   4. Berta (my grandmother).
   5. Pedro (my father).
   7. Carlos (my mother's 5th husband).

10. The police are looking for Y.

11. The other man is in his mid-forties/is middle-aged, short and overweight, with short grey hair and a beard.

Unit 14

1. funny 5. clever
2. quiet 6. friendly
3. relaxed 7. laugh
4. nice

2. 1. unfriendly 5. funny
2. intelligent 6. serious
3. horrible 7. relaxed
4. stupid 8. kind

ANSWER KEY 207
3 1 serious 
2 are, fun, horrible/unfriendly 
3 What, kind, clever/intelligent 
4 really friendly, really nice, really funny, really interesting. 
5 T 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F 
6 Answers from a British person 
1 I’m very sporty. 
2 I don’t think I’m very relaxed. 
3 I’m tidy at work but untidy at home. 
4 I’m hardworking most of the time. 
5 I’m quiet but I think I’m quite sociable as well. 
6 Yes, I think I am.

Unit 15
1 1 They had a baby last year. 
2 They split up in January. 
3 We have a very good relationship. 
4 How did you get to know her? 
5 They were together for three years. 
6 I went out with him for six months.
2 1 have 5 ex-
2 together 6 divorced, partner/
3 couple girlfriend, get
4 out, up
3 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S
4 Answers from an Hungarian person 
1 My wife. 
2 Seven years. 
3 At a friend’s Christmas party. 
4 We have mutual friends. 
5 We live together. 
6 Because we love each other. We’re interested in similar things, and we want the same things in life.

Unit 16
1 1 I’m tired. 5 I’m boiling.
2 I’m nervous. 6 I’m ill, or I feel ill.
3 I’m thirsty. 7 or I don’t feel well.
4 I’m hungry.
2 1 matter; feel or’ m 4 boiling
2 tired 5 nervous
3 matter; freezing 6 What’s; well
4 1 angry 6 frightened
2 worried 7 unhappy
3 upset 8 embarrassed
4 scared 9 excited
5 surprised
5 1 angry 6 happy
2 surprised 7 upset or sad or unhappy
3 worried 8 frightened or scared
4 excited 9 love
5 embarrassed

Unit 17
1 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
2 I have breakfast at 8 a.m.
3 I leave home at 8:30 a.m.
4 I finish work at 6 p.m.
5 I have dinner with my family.
6 I go to bed at 11 o’clock. 
7 I sleep seven hours a night.
2 1 get 4 get
2 have 5 have
3 leave 6 go
3 Answers from a Japanese person 
1 I get dressed before breakfast.
2 Yes, I do sometimes.
3 In the sitting room.
4 At about 8:15.
5 At about 8:50.
6 My family.
7 At around 11:30.
8 About 8 hours.
5 do the shopping once or twice a week 
stay in go shopping 
play tennis go to the gym 
come round at the weekend 
go for a walk
6 1 go 6 late
2 round 7 at
3 play 8 gym
4 out or shopping 9 do, early
5 During, in 10 see
7 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D
8 1 Haruko gets up early every day.
2 Hiro hardly ever goes to the gym.
3 Haruko always stays in.
4 Hiro studies all day.
5 Haruko never has a shower in the morning.
6 Hiro occasionally goes to the cinema.

9 Answers from a British person 
1 True. I always have a shower before breakfast.
2 False. I occasionally go out on Friday evening.
3 False. I sometimes listen to music in the evening.
4 False. I never study on Sunday.
5 False. I often watch TV at the weekend.
6 False. I sometimes work in the evening.
7 True. I usually go shopping on Monday. 
8 False. I never go to the gym after dinner.
Unit 18
1. jacket 6. T-shirt
2. trousers 7. dress
3. jumper 8. jeans
4. coat 9. sweater
5. raincoat
1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T 8 F
9 T 10 F 11 T 12 F
5. gloves 4. sandals
2. umbrella 5. hat
3. jeans 6. jeans
6. 1. Give me the sock.
2. Not possible.
3. I've got one pair of sandals.
4. Not possible.
5. She's wearing my scarf.
6. Where is my glove?
7. Not possible.
8. Not possible.
7. Answers from a German person
1. Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.
2. I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.
3. No, I only wear leather shoes.
4. I wear sunglasses in summer.
5. I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

Unit 19
1. short 5. loose
2. comfortable 6. expensive
3. small 7. smart
4. casual 8. long
2. 1. uncomfortable 5. small
2. nice 6. long
3. casual 7. loose
4. expensive 8. lovely
3. 1. short 5. loose
2. uncomfortable 6. horrible/awful/terrible
3. casual 4. expensive
5. a or a size 4. fit, too
2. medium 5. take
3. wrong 6. fit, too
6. 1. The shirt is too small/tight.
2. The trousers are too long.
3. The hat's too big.
7. 1. Where do I pay?
2. No thanks, I'll leave it.
3. Excuse me, where's the changing room?
4. Can I try this dress on?
5. I'm looking for a pair of trousers.
6. Do you need any help?

Unit 20
1. on 5. room
2. desk 6. help
3. them 7. lovely/nice
4. card 8. pay
9. Answers from a Turkish person
1. No, I don't.
2. I buy clothes about four times a year.
3. I bought some very nice walking shoes.
4. Yes, I always do.
5. Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
6. I usually pay by debit card.

Unit 21
1. 1 c 2 i 3 h 4 j 5 b 6 a 7 e 8 f 9 g
2. 1. rain 4. foggy
2. sunny 5. wind
3. snows 6. cloudy

ANSWER KEY 209
unit 22

1. 1 hurts 7 flu
2. 've got 8 has
3. feel 9 've got
4. feel 10 has
5. feel 11's
6. hurts 12 haven't got
7. cough 5 stomach-ache
8. temperature 6 sick
9. hurt 7 flu
10. matter; well 8 throat

5. Possible answers

1. You should go and lie down for a while.
2. You should go to the pharmacy.
3. You should stay in bed for a day or two.
4. You should go and lie down for a while.
5. You should go and see your GP.

unit 23

1. 1 cotton wool 4 antiseptic 7 cream
2. tissues 5 plasters 8 medicine
3. correct 6 pharmacist
4. 1 a sore throat
5. take these tablets
6. for toothache, please
7. wool
8. some plasters, please
9. for your finger
10. this medicine — it's very good
11. tablet three times a day
12. help you

unit 24

1. Pork, because it's a meat.
2. Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
3. Tuna, because it's a fish.
4. Salmon, because it's a fish.
5. Cow, because it's only an animal.
6. Your own answers

unit 25

1. grapes, melon, lemon, avocado, strawberry.
2. cherry, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
3. 1 sweet 5 small
4. bitter 6 good
5. red 7 sweet
6. green 8 big
7. 1 carrot 5 beans
8. onion 6 courgette
9. pepper 7 tomato
10. cabbage 8 garlic
11. 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F
12. Your own answers

unit 26

1. 1 ✓ 7 ✓
2. ✓ 8 bread or some bread
3. butter or some bread
4. ✓ 9 ✗ 10 rice or some rice
5. cheese or some cheese
6. ✓ 12 ✓
| 2 | milk | 7 | butter |
| 2 | some cheese | 8 | rice |
| 3 | sugar | 9 | a large bar of chocolate |
| 4 | biscuits | 10 | noodles |
| 5 | some olive oil | 6 | six eggs |
| 8 | 1 | cream | 5 | course |
| 2 | steak | 6 | sauce |
| 3 | salad | 7 | dole |
| 4 | soup | 8 | boiled |

**Your own answers**

8 1 | some more | 5 | of course |
2 | to order | 6 | the |
3 | another | 7 | I'll |
4 | meal | 8 | certainly |
9 1 | have | 6 | dessert |
2 | how | 7 | 'll |
3 | course | 8 | bill |
4 | sparkling | 9 | sure/certainly |
5 | some |

**Unit 27**

1 1 | roll, baguette, sandwich, toasted sandwich cappuccino, tea, orange juice, espresso, black coffee |
2 | 1 | bread | 6 | couple |
2 | 2 | sandwich | 7 | white |
3 | 3 | chocolate | 8 | white |
4 | 4 | coffee | 9 | have |
5 | 5 | take away |
3 | 1 | I'd like two coffees, please. |
2 | To drink here or take away? |
3 | To drink here. And a toasted ham sandwich. |
4 | OK. It will be a couple of minutes. |
5 | Have a seat, please. |

**Unit 28**

1 1 | fork | 9 | wine |
2 | spoon | 10 | red |
3 | napkin | 11 | white |
4 | plate | 12 | salt |
5 | bowl | 13 | black pepper |
6 | bottle | 14 | bottles |
7 | mineral water | 15 | oil |
8 | glasses | 16 | vinegar |

2 | Answers from an Argentinian person On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have salt, pepper, napkins, oil and vinegar. We don't usually have a bottle of mineral water, a bowl or a glass of red wine. |

| 4 | 1 | milk | 2 | T | 3 | F | 4 | T | 5 | F | 6 | T | 7 | F | 8 | T |
| 9 | F | 10 | T |
| 5 | 1 | cream | 5 | course |
| 2 | steak | 6 | sauce |
| 3 | salad | 7 | dole |
| 4 | soup | 8 | boiled |

8 1 | some more | 5 | of course |
2 | to order | 6 | the |
3 | another | 7 | I'll |
4 | meal | 8 | certainly |
9 1 | have | 6 | dessert |
2 | how | 7 | 'll |
3 | course | 8 | bill |
4 | sparkling | 9 | sure/certainly |
5 | some |

**Unit 29**

1 1 | How many stops is it to the railway station? |
2 | Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school? |
3 | How long does it take to the railway station? |
4 | Does the 24 stop outside the post office? |
5 | Where do I get off for the cinema? |
6 | Does the 24 go to the park? |
7 | How often does the 24 run? |
8 | Which is the last stop for the 16? |

2 | 1 | Five | 5 | At the next stop |
2 | The 16 or the 24 | 6 | No, it doesn't |
3 | About ten | 7 | Every ten minutes |
4 | Yes, it does | 8 | The railway station |

3 | 1 | stop | 6 | timetable |
2 | next/second | 7 | run |
3 | last/final | 8 | runs |
4 | get off | 9 | every |
5 | goes/runs | 10 | takes |

4 | Answers from a British person |
1 | Yes, at the end of the road. |
2 | The 8 and the 15. |
3 | They run about every 15 minutes. |
4 | I don't get the bus very often, but I sometimes get it to the town centre. |
5 | Four. |
6 | Five to ten minutes. |

**Unit 30**

1 | a slow train | 4 | the 7 o'clock train |
2 | get off the train | 5 | a seat |
3 | catch a train | 6 | at (a railway) station |

2 | fare | 5 | last/next |
2 | carriage | 6 | waited/wait |
3 | missed | 7 | timetable |
4 | get/take | 8 | journey |
Answers from a German person
1. A month ago.
2. I went to Berlin to see friends.
3. I paid 75.50 for the ticket.
4. Yes, I always do, because you get reduced prices.
5. It was a direct journey from Hannover to Berlin.

Unit 31
1 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the bank?
2 Go along here and turn left.
3 Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
4 It's the third turning on the right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
6 Turn left into Foster Road.

2 1 turning 5 going
2 much 6 on
3 left/right/corner 7 here
4 me 8 way

3 1 get 2 straight 3 turning 4 left 5 much
2
1 Excuse 2 near 3 along 4 take 5 turning
6 right 7 opposite 8 Thanks
3
1 way 2 Turn 3 into 4 corner 5 right

Unit 32
1 1 station 5 crossing
2 road 6 park
3 camera 7 jam
4 sign

2 1 station 6 speed
2 main 7 roundabout
3 sign 8 traffic
4 park 9 pavement
5 crossing 10 junction

4 1 motorway 4 speed limit
2 rush hour 5 accident
3 overtake 6 a quiet road

5 1 busy 3 far
2 lane, overtake 4 take, drive

Answers from a Turkish person
1 Three.
2 120 kph.
3 Not speed cameras, but police radar.
4 No. We drive on the right, the steering wheel is on the left.
5 9 a.m. and 6 p.m.

Unit 33
1 1 f 2 h 3 j 4 c 5 b 6 e 7 i 8 g 9 a
2 1 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
2 in/out
3 do not disturb/ring bell
4 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
5 in/out
6 do not disturb/ring bell
7 declare

Unit 34
1 1 Porto Alegre 6 Colombia
2 Brasilia 7 Río de Janeiro
3 Amazon 8 Mountain
4 Pico da Neblina 9 Inland
5 Argentina 10 coast

2 Possible answers
1 It's the longest river in Brazil.
2 It's the highest mountain in Brazil.
3 It's the capital.
4 It's a town in the south.
5 It has a border with the south of Brazil.
6 It's a famous city on the coast.

Answers from a Greek person
1 Athens. It's in the north/centre of Greece.
2 Thessaloniki, Patras and Corinth.
3 Yes, it has borders with Albania, FYROM (Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia), Bulgaria and Turkey.

6 The islands.
7 The Parthenon and the ancient theatre of the Acropolis.

Unit 35
1 1 bridge 5 park
2 square 6 mosque
3 castle 7 building
4 cathedral

2 1 temple 5 park
2 bridge 6 statue, square
3 market 7 castle, palace
4 museum 8 place
4 Size: a small village, a large city, a medium-sized town.
Location: on the coast, on the River Duero, south-west of the capital.
Population: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000.
Interesting facts: famous for historic buildings, an industrial town.
5 1 of 5 population
2 in 6 under
3 of 7 industrial
4 on 8 historic

6 Answer from a British person
Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England.
It’s on the River Avon. The population is just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist place in England, with lots of historic buildings, including a famous abbey (like a cathedral) and many museums.
7 1 no 4 no 7 no
2 yes 5 yes
3 yes 6 yes
8 1 cosmopolitan 4 nightlife
2 dangerous 5 crowded/busy
3 do 6 polluted

9 Answers from a Hungarian person (who lives in Budapest)
1 It’s pretty safe, although we had some riots recently, but these are very unusual.
2 It’s a big city, and there’s a lot to do: there are cinemas, restaurants, cafés, shopping centres, parks and museums – whatever you’re interested in.
3 It’s a very busy city. There are two million people living there, and thousands commute there for work.
4 There are many popular clubs, bars, all-night cafés, late cinemas, concerts and other cultural events.
5 Yes, it is.
6 Some people think it’s noisy and dirty, but I love it because it’s got everything.

Unit 36
1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F 9 T
2 1 valley, hill 5 own, dog, horse
2 grass 6 crops, grow
3 few trees 7 farmers
4 fields

3 Answers from an Argentinian person
1 Neither, I live in the city centre.
2 Yes, there is a natural lake close to my home.
3 No, I can’t.
4 Yes, they are on the pavement.
5 There is a football pitch.
6 No.
7 Wheat, soy and corn.
8 Yes, I know a few.
9 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 S

6 1 I often buy flowers.
2 I love the countryside.
3 I’m very healthy.
4 I see lots of birds in my area.
5 Our public transport is wonderful.
6 I’m often alone in the evening.
7 I eat fresh fruit every day.
8 I never feel lonely.

7 Answers from a Japanese person
1 False. I don’t buy flowers.
2 True.
3 True.
4 True, but not the pretty ones. I only see pigeons and crows.
5 True.
6 False. My family is normally with me.
7 False. I only eat fresh fruit a few times a week.
8 True.

Unit 37
1 1 butcher’s 4 deli
2 baker’s 5 chemist’s
3 paper shop 6 newsagent’s

2 Possible answers
1 sandwiches, bread, coffee, cheese, ham
2 medicine, aspirins, soap, shampoo
3 fruit, vegetables, meat, fish, bread, books
4 newspapers, cigarettes, chocolates
5 bread, cakes
6 CDs, DVDs

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F
5 1 shopping 4 convenient
2 prefer 5 deliver
3 queue 6 get

6 Answers from a British person
1 We usually do the shopping on Saturday morning.
2 I prefer small shops, but I have to use the supermarket a lot.
3 Yes, often.
4 Yes, they are.
5 One or two of them deliver, but I always carry things home myself.
6 At the market.

ANSWER KEY 213
Unit 38
1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T 9 T
2 1 basement 6 garden 2 block of flats 7 steps
3 ground floor 8 neighbour 4 front door 9 balcony
5 stairs 10 town centre
4 study, view, modern, living room, toilet,
   kitchen, home, dining room, upstairs,
   bedroom, utility room, parking, bathroom
5 1 living 8 kitchen 2 bathroom 9 study
3 view 10 Upstairs 4 garage 11 bedrooms
5 garden 12 bathrooms 6 outside 13 parking
7 views 14 outside
6 Answers from a German person
   1 I live in a flat.
   2 On the first floor.
   3 No.
   4 I look into the courtyard.
   5 No, but there are always free spaces.
   6 I have a living room, a bedroom, a dining room,
      a guest room, a bathroom, a kitchen
      and a big hallway.

Unit 39
1 1 washing machine 7 frying pan
2 dishwasher, sink 8 freezer
3 saucers, cupboard 9 full
4 shelf/shelves 10 microwave, hob
5 bin 11 tap
6 oven 12 saucepan
2 Answers from a Turkish person
   My washing machine is in the bathroom.
4 1 shopping 6 puts
2 put (everything) away 7 takes
3 empty 8 cook
4 clean 9 washing-up
5 make 10 ironing
5 Answers from a Greek person
   1 My partner.
   2 I do.
   3 I do.
   4 I do.
   5 My partner.
   6 We both do.

Unit 40
1 1 mirror 4 bidet
2 desk 5 wardrobe
3 blanket 6 towel
2 1 bedside table 7 wardrobe
2 mirror 8 bidet
3 bath 9 blanket
4 chest of drawers 10 sheet
5 washbasin 11 towel
6 toilet 12 shower
3 Answers from an Argentinian person
   In my bedroom, there's a double bed, a
   bedside table, a chest of drawers, a chair
   and a wardrobe.
   In my bathroom, there's a shower, a
   washbasin, a toilet, a long mirror and two
towels.
5 1 do, brush 4 shave
2 have 5 washes, shampoo
3 puts on 6 tissues
6 1 a 2 a 3 - 4 a 5 -- 6 an 7 -- 8 a, --
7 Your own answers

Unit 41
1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T
9 T 10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F
2 1 floor 7 bookshelves
2 carpet 8 light
3 cushion 9 curtains
4 radiator 10 armchair
5 coffee table 11 rug
6 ceiling 12 fireplace
3 Answers from a Japanese person
1 We've got one large window and one
   small window in our living room.
2 No, we've got air conditioning.
3 We've got wooden floorboards and a
   tatami mat.
4 There are a few pictures on the walls.
5 On the ceiling.
6 We've got a large sofa, a dinner table, a
   TV, a cupboard and a few cushions.

Unit 42
1 1 history 5 physics
2 geography 6 maths
3 biology 7 music
4 design 8 literature
2 1 PE/physical education
2 ICT/information communication technology
3 literature
4 modern languages
5 RE/religious education
6 chemistry
7 art
3 Your own answers

5 c 2 h 3 g 4 l 5 a 6 e 7 b 8 d

6 1 start 4 leave, get
2 uniform 5 state, private
3 pupils, secondary

7 Answers from a German person
1 Usually at the age of six, sometimes five.
2 We don't have school uniforms in Germany.
3 At the age of ten.
4 It depends on the kind of school they are attending. The earliest is 15.
5 There are state schools and private schools. The majority of children go to state schools.

8 1 no 3 2 5 E
2 5 4 A 6 C

9 1 take 4 results
2 do 5 badly, failed
3 well, grade 6 worst

10 Answers from a Turkish person
1 They were 50 minutes.
2 Yes.
3 When I was eleven years old. I was in a special school and I had to pass an exam to get into it.
4 I took one exam with many sections like Turkish language, maths, science, geography, history and general knowledge.
5 Yes.

Unit 43

1 1 do 5 A graduate
2 term 6 Unfortunately
3 BSc 7 after
4 library

2 1 degree 4 fortunately
2 do/wear 5 again
3 do, PhD 6 last

3 Answers from a Greek person
1 Four years.
2 Two or three years.
3 About ten weeks.
4 About twelve weeks.
5 Yes, always.

4 1 doctor 5 economist
2 engineer 6 politician
3 architect 7 journalist
4 psychologist 8 businessman/manager

5 1 lawyer P 7 politics DS
2 architecture DS 8 engineer P
3 computer science DS 9 medicine DS
4 software engineer P 10 economics DS
5 psychology DS 11 IT manager P
6 business studies DS 12 reporter P

Unit 44

1 1 vet 6 businesswoman
2 shop assistant 7 secretary
3 nurse 8 dentist
4 old 9 chef
5 hasn't 10 builder

2 1 businessman 7 builder
2 shop assistant 8 lorry driver
3 hairdresser 9 cleaner
4 secretary 10 housewife
5 police officer 11 self-employed
6 retired 12 soldier

3 1 a hairdresser 5 retired
2 a pilot 6 self-employed
3 unemployed 7 a teacher
4 the boss's manager 8 a chef

4 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I'm a secretary.
2 My friend Helen is the head chef at the George Hotel.
3 I don't know anyone who's a hairdresser.
4 My mother is unemployed.
5 I don't know anyone who's retired.
6 My friend Carla is an English teacher.
7 My friend Dave is a pilot.
8 My father's friend Mr Kitamura is a dentist.
9 My father and brother are businessmen.
10 Mr Karasawa is my boss.

Unit 45

1 1 hours a day 6 she work
2 a factory 7 an American airline
3 office 8 earn much
4 work for 9 job
5 does he earn 10 ten to six

2 1 part 5 hours
2 a 6 day
3 earn 7 year
4 low 8 salary

3 Answers from a British person
1 I'm a reporter.
2 I work for a local newspaper.
3 I work in an office, and I go out and talk to people.
4 I work very long hours, often 12 or 14 hours a day.
4 1 does make 5 organize organize
2 meet meeting 6 correct
3 type typing 7 about
4 correct 8 to
5 meet 6 colleagues
2 answer 7 discuss
3 send/write 8 organize
4 spend 9 clients
5 making 10 have

Unit 46
1 1 screen 5 monitor
2 mouse 6 keyboard
3 personal computer 7 disk
4 memory stick 8 webcam
2 1 speaker 5 memory stick, disk
2 hard copies 6 mouse
3 hard drive 7 mouse mat
4 laptop 8 screen
3 Answers from a German person
1 I have an old PC and a new Mac.
2 Yes. I use my printer almost every day.
3 One of my computers is a laptop. I keep it
   in the guest room.
4 Yes, I have photos of friends, family and
   my holidays on the computer.
5 No, we don't have a webcam.
5 1 q 2 e 3 a 4 h 5 b 6 f 7 c
6 1 clicked 5 cut
2 beginning, end 6 save
3 make/save 7 open
4 did 8 middle

Unit 47
1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
2 I must reply to Jean's message.
3 Did you get/receive my message?
4 Have you checked your emails/messages?
5 Please forward the attachment to John.
6 She sent Jan an email yesterday.
3 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Almost every day.
2 My colleagues, family and friends.
3 Commercial, healthy life emails.
4 Yes they do. They send me pictures,
   poems and jokes.
5 Yes.
4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S
9 D 10 S
5 1 search 4 broadband
2 download 5 website
3 on/using 6 visit

6 Answers from a Greek person
1 annaingreece@yahoo.com
2 Very rarely.
3 It's www.in.gr
4 Google.
5 No.
6 I use the Internet almost every day.
7 No, never.
8 Yes, I download it onto my PC.
9 I use Google.

Unit 48
1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A
2 I hate chocolate.
3 They don't like doing homework very
   much.
4 He doesn't like speaking English very
   much.
5 I quite like shopping.
6 She doesn't like driving.
7 I think tennis is OK.
8 I really like going out with friends.
9 She loves watching sport.
3 Answers from a German person
1 I love watching TV.
2 I really like studying English.
3 I love driving.
4 I don't like shopping for clothes.
5 I like cleaning the house.
6 I quite like writing emails.
7 I like talking on the phone.
8 I love going to the cinema.
4 I enjoy watching TV.
5 I'm not interested in politics.
6 My favourite film is 'Tootsie'.
7 She prefers reading to writing.
8 He's a fantastic boss.
9 Was the party good fun?
10 It's a boring programme.
5 1 fun 5 keen
2 prefer 6 enjoy
3 favourite 7 interesting
4 interested
6 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Yes it is.
2 I like both.
3 Istanbul.
4 Yes. I like swimming.
5 Yes.
6 Yes.
7 Yes.
Unit 49
1 football pitch, tennis racket, basketball, ice hockey, three nil
2 T
3 F You score goals in ice hockey, or You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
4 F You play football on a pitch, or You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
5 F You play ice hockey with sticks, or You play tennis with rackets.
6 T
7 T
8 F You play rugby with a rugby ball, or You play Ice hockey with a puck.
3 1 game 4 score/result, nil
2 basketball 5 pitch, court
3 games, set
4 1 match/game 5 beat
2 against 6 won
3 top 7 drew
4 to 8 beat
5 1 match/game 6 beat
2 against 7 scored
3 lost 8 won
4 drew; with 9 leading
5 time 10 score
6 Your own answers

Unit 50
1 1 another place 5 another place
2 inside 6 inside
3 inside 7 another place
4 inside 8 inside
2 1 go 6 spend
2 collects 7 go
3 play 8 does
4 does 9 makes
5 play
3 Your own answers
5 1 True.
2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
3 False. Dima plays the guitar.
4 False. Veronica's favourite hobby is drawing.
5 True.
6 False. Alexandra's quite good at shooting.
7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
8 False. Older people like repairing cars.
6 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I love exercising and cooking.
2 Older people like watching TV, gossiping and playing gateball (a Japanese game).
3 Younger people like karaoke and shopping.
4 I never listen to classical music.
5 No. I can't play a musical instrument.
6 No. I'm a bad singer.

Unit 51
1 1 2004 4 album
2 able 5 Alex Turner
3 two 6 drums
2 1 group 5 album
2 lead 6 chart
3 drummer 7 known
4 single 8 download
3 Answers from a British person
1 The Beatles.
3 In 1962.
4 Hey Jude.
5 Sergeant Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band.
6 Eleanor Rigby.
4 1 conductor 5 cello
2 orchestra 6 composer
3 classical 7 perform
4 concert 8 pianist
5 1 orchestra 6 opera singer
2 conductor 7 composer
3 pianist 8 by
4 violinist 9 concert, performing/
5 cellist singing

Unit 52
1 1 thriller 4 cartoon
2 comedy 5 love story
3 action film 6 horror film
2 1 c 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 e
3 1 romantic 3 frightening/scary
2 violent 4 funny
5 1 kind 6 actors
2 about 7 director
3 reviews 8 on
4 in 9 see
5 stars

ANSWER KEY 217
6 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I like comedies a lot.
2 'The Holiday'.
3 At my local cinema, 'Nankai Cinema'.
4 Jude Law and Cameron Diaz.
5 Nancy Meyers.
6 It's a love story.

Unit 53
1 I D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D
2 1 magazines 5 wars
3 2 report 6 opinion(s)
4 3 events/news 7 celebrities
5 4 disasters

4 1 in 6 –
2 the 7 of, on
3 on 8 believe
4 out 9 of
5 programme

5 1 watch, saw/watched
2 believe/think, none
3 news, happened
4 listen, heard/listened to
5 paper/newspaper
6 forecast
7 watch, much

6 Your own answers

Unit 54
1 1 abroad 5 hire
2 arrange 6 find
3 might 7 packed
4 get 8 book

2 1 abroad 6 currency
2 flight(s) 7 insurance
3 accommodation 8 might
4 booked/arranged/decided 9 pack
5 get 10 find

Unit 55
1 1 staff 4 tourists
2 recommended 5 facilities
3 delicious 6 minibar
2 1 stay 5 satellite
2 staff 6 conditioning, heating
3 facilities 7 guests
4 minibar 8 recommend

3 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I stayed in a ryokan in Shikoku.
2 One night.
3 Yes, very helpful.
4 No. It was not as good as I expected.
5 Yes, it did.
6 No, it didn’t.
7 It had air conditioning but not central heating.
8 Yes. I talked to a lady in the public bath.
9 Yes, I can. It was a good hotel.

4 1 no 5 £60
2 yes 6 no
3 yes 7 no
4 no 8 yes

5 1 like 9 included
2 book 10 air
3 double 11 afraid
4 twin 12 shame
5 en suite 13 mind
6 shower 14 Right/OK/Fine/
7 fine/great 15 Great/Good
8 a

Unit 56
1 1 suitcase 7 boarding card
2 luggage 8 window seat
3 aisle seat 9 ticket
4 hand luggage 10 scales
5 good flight 11 trolley
6 airport

3 1 no 4 no
2 no 5 2
3 yes

4 1 call, gate 4 check-in
2 boarding 5 depart/leave
3 delayed
5 2 (a) fasten your seat belt
(b) the plane takes off
(c) the plane lands
5 (a) get off the plane
6 (b) someone checks your passport
7 (a) collect your luggage
8 (b) go through customs
9 (f) leave the terminal

6 1 lands
2 your seat belt
3 customs, passport control
4 luggage, baggage reclaim
5 get on, get off

7 Answers from a British person
1 Two or three times a year.
2 I usually read a book or magazine.
3 An aisle seat.
4 A small bag and my laptop.
### Unit 57
1. **1 rent**
2. swimming costume
3. **3 shorts**
4. apartment
5. beach
6. got/took, went
7. **5 ran, ran**
8. **6 lie**

### Unit 58
1. **1 go**
2. book
3. **3 visit**
4. took, typical
5. should, round
6. **3 got, map**

**Your own answers**

### Unit 59
1. **1 a 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 e**
2. **1 Sign**
3. Change
4. **5 currency**

**Answers from a British person**
1. The pound sterling.
2. **£1 = $1.84 at the moment.**
3. At a bank or a bureau de change.
4. Yes, often.
5. They are usually inside or outside banks, at the supermarket, in stations and petrol stations.
6. deliver letters
7. the name, address and postcode
8. to the post office
9. on the scales
10. **a stamp**
11. the postman
12. a letter, a parcel, a postcard
13. Is there a letter/post box near here?
14. Can you put it on the scales?
15. Can I have three stamps for Argentina?
16. Where can I post this letter?
17. How much is a postcard to Russia?
18. Can you buy envelopes at the post office?

### Unit 60
1. **1 Hello, nice to meet you.**
2. Max, this is Hanna. or Hanna, this is Max.
3. Bye. I hope to see you again. or I hope to see you again. Bye.
4. Goodbye. Nice to meet you. or Nice to meet you. Goodbye.

### Unit 61
1. **1 i 2 h 3 g 4 d 5 j 6 c 7 f 8 e 9 a**
2. 1 Have a nice/good day, evening, weekend, holiday, journey, time
3. 2 Happy Christmas, Easter, New Year, birthday
4. 3 Goodnight! Good luck! Well done! Welcome home!

### Unit 62
1. **1 How often do you go there?**
2. What kind of music do you like?
3. What does he do?
4. How long have you lived there?
5. What’s wrong with Peter?
6. Who does this belong to?
7. What’s his flat like?
8. Why don’t you like her?
9. **1 2 b s c 2 d e 6 f 3 g 2**
10. 3 Which

**Answers from a Turkish person**
1. In Adana, Turkey.
2. Half of my life.
3. Capadocia and the coast.
4. Three hours in a car.
5. Atma Ali (a kebab house in Adana).
Unit 63
1 1 Can you lend me a pen? – Yes, of course.
2 Could you bring the books here, please? –
   Yes, no problem.
3 Could you possibly wait here a few
   minutes? – I’m afraid I can’t.
4 Lia, can you change places with Maris,
   please? – Yes, sure.
2 Possible answers
1 A Could you finish this exercise for
   homework, please?
   B Yes, sure.
2 A Luca, can you change places with
   Maria, please?
   B Yes, no problem.
3 A Could you bring your notebook
   tomorrow, please?
   B I’m afraid I can’t.
4 A Can you lend me a pencil, please?
   B Yes, sure.
5 A Could you possibly wait in the
   classroom a few minutes?
   B Yes, no problem.
3 Possible answers
1 Is it all right if I use this dictionary?
2 Do you mind/is it all right if I make a
   coffee?
3 Could I stay for another ten minutes?
   or Is it OK/all right if I stay another ten
   minutes? or Do you mind if I stay another
   ten minutes?
4 Is it OK if I close the window?
5 Can I borrow your book?
6 Yes, sure/no problem/go ahead that’s
   fine.
7 I’m afraid I need it.
8 Is it all right to have my coffee here? –
   Yes, of course/no problem/go ahead/
   that’s fine.
4 Possible answers
1 Do you mind if I go at one o’clock today?
2 Could I borrow a rubber?
3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?
5 OK: Yes, no problem; Yes, of course; Go
   ahead; Yes, that’s fine.
Unit 64
1 1 Would you like to come round later?
   2 Yes, I’d love to.
   3 Do you want to go out for dinner?
   4 That sounds lovely.
   5 I’m afraid I can’t.
   6 That would be nice.
   7 Do you want to come to a party?
   8 I’m sorry, but I’m busy tonight.
2 1 A Would you like to go out for dinner/a
   meal?
   B Yes, great!
2 A Do you want to come round for a
   coffee?
   B I’m afraid I can’t.
3 A Would you like to come to a party
   tomorrow?
   B Yes, that sounds lovely.
4 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
   B I’d love to, but I’m going to the gym.
Unit 65
1 1 What shall we do this weekend?
2 The weather’s nice, so ...
3 ... what about going to the beach?
4 Yes, good idea.
5 Maybe we could take the train.
6 Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
7 I’d prefer to get them at the station.
2 1 What shall we do this evening?
2 Do you have a suggestion?
3 What about going to see a film?
4 I’d prefer to go by train.
5 Yes, that’s a good idea.
3 1 A What about going to the theatre?
   B I’m not sure about that.
2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
   B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
   A OK, let’s do that.
3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
   B Let’s go to an exhibition.
   A Yeah, that’s a good idea.
Unit 66
1 1 hand, worry 3 Do, fine
2 eat, Could 4 like, Thanks
1 2 Can I give you a hand?
2 Thank you very much.
3 Would you like a drink?
4 Thanks a lot.
5 No, I’m fine, thanks.
3 1 A Would you like a drink?
   B Yes, please. Could I have some water?
   A Do you need some help?
   B No, I’m fine, thanks.
3 A Would you like something to eat?
   B Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
4 A Can I give you a hand?
   B No, don’t worry.
4 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 b
5 1 of 5 Shall I
2 Let 6 give
3 Shall 7 me
4 Would 8 want
Unit 67
1 1 A I'm really sorry, I've lost your dictionary.
B Don't worry/never mind.
2 A I'm sorry, I've forgotten your book.
B Don't worry.
3 A I've broken your cup – I'm very sorry.
B It doesn't matter.
2 1 That's 5 I'm
2 worry 6 Sorry, problem
3 very/really, matter 7 apologize
4 mind 8 rude

Unit 68
1 1 What do you think of it?
2 I agree with you.
3 I don't think it's very good.
4 It was a waste of money.
5 Personally, I didn't like it.
6 I prefer the other one
2 1 think, Personally 3 of, think
2 opinion, agree 4 sure, prefer

Answers from a British person
1 I'm not sure. I think children watch too much TV.
2 I agree. It's very bad for your health.
3 Personally, I like it.
4 I'm not sure. Other things are more important.
5 I disagree. I think it's very expensive.

Unit 69
1 1 engaged, phone
2 number, code
3 call, out, message, rang, battery
4 wrong
3 Answers from a British person
1 My phone number is 600945, the area code is 01632, and my mobile number is 0779 893 200.
2 My family.
3 Only a few minutes.
4 No, not very often. I text my sister sometimes.
4 1 Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
2 Just a moment.
3 Speaking.
4 Oh, hello, how are you?
5 1 speaking 7 speak to
2 This is it's 8 just a
3 in/there, please 9 get
4 the moment 10 is that
5 ring/call/phone 11 speaking
back/again 12 It

Unit 70
1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
2 1 useful 5 noisy
2 weak 6 narrow
3 dead 7 unusual
4 rich 8 asleep
5 quiet 10 wide
4 1 SYN 4 OPP
2 SYN 5 SYN
3 OPP
5 1 confusing 6 necessary
2 helpful 7 strange/odd
3 impossible 8 clear
4 mad/crazy 9 annoying/irritating
5 only

Unit 71
1 1 He's 75 and he still plays tennis.
2 It's nice there, especially in the morning.
3 There are only three students in the class.
4 He even works on Sunday.
5 She's still at university.
6 Rio is big, but São Paulo is even bigger.
2 1 only 4 only
2 still 5 even
3 particularly 6 still
3 1 Only 4 only
2 still 5 even
3 especially/ particularly 6 especially/ particularly
4 1 very 7 very/really
2 absolutely 8 really
3 a bit/a little 5 really/extremely
4 really 6 quite
5 very/really

Possible answers
1 He was extremely good.
2 The holiday was really wonderful.
3 She's a bit unfriendly.
4 The kitchen was really clean.
5 The room was a little small.
6 Her new boyfriend is absolutely awful.
7 They're very nice people.
8 The weather was really terrible.
Unit 72
1 put, cost, read
2 write, drive, win
3 spend, send, lend
4 know, hold, grow
5 buy, bring, think
6 left, spoke, kept, won, did, found, felt, sat
7 was, slept
8 saw
9 bought
10 rang
11 stood
12 wrote, forgot
13 took, went
14 brought, kept, put, felt, held, spent, left, cost, thought, slept, stood up
15 forgotten
16 known
17 given
18 spoken
19 seen
20 driven
21 taken
22 grown
23 written

They all end in -n or -en.

1 2
3 4
5 6
7 8
9 10
11 12
13 14
15 16
17 18
19 20
21 22
23 24

8 Answers from an Argentinian person
1 I read an English newspaper once a week.
2 No, never.
3 Yes, many times.
4 Yes, a few times in a lottery.
5 Oh, yes. It was terrible!
6 Yes, on a cruise.
7 Yes, many times.
8 Yes, on several occasions.

Unit 73
1 out
2 up
3 over
4 5
5 6
6 7
7 8
8

1 out
2 up
3 over
4 5
5 6
6 7
7 8
8

4 Take it off.
5 Take them off.
6 Try them on.
7 Turn it on.
8 Put it on.

1 Could I try it on?
2 correct
3 You can take it off if you're hot.
4 Look it up in the dictionary.
5 correct
6 correct
7 Did you put it on?
8 correct

6 Answers from a Hungarian person
1 I grew up in Budapest.
2 I always feel hungry.
3 Once or twice a week.
4 I don't know many of them, but I get on well with my neighbours.
5 I try on trousers or shoes, but I often buy shirts without trying them on.

Unit 74
1 2005
2 Friday
3 April
4 the morning
5 4.40
6 7 in
7 8 at
8 9 At
9 10 on
10

1 2005
2 Friday
3 April
4 the morning
5 4.40
6 7 in
7 8 at
8 9 At
9 10 on
10

3 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I get up at 7.30.
2 I study English at night.
3 I go swimming at the weekend.
4 I watch TV in the evening.
5 I go to sleep at around 11.30.
6 I see my family in the mornings.
7 The last time I went on holiday was in October last year.
8 The last time I went to the mountains was in 2003.
9 The last time I went to bed very late was at New Year.
10 The last time I went to a party was in December.

Unit 75
1 1 T
2 2 T
3 F
4 T
5 F
6 F
7 T
8 F
9 T
10 T
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

1 1 T
2 2 T
3 F
4 T
5 F
6 F
7 T
8 F
9 T
10 T
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

1 I went to the cinema
2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's Bar
3 I stayed at Gary's/I went to Gary's
4 I've got a doctor's appointment
5 It's Pete's birthday
6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

4 1 before
2 after
3 until
4 at

1 before
2 after
3 until
4 at

4 1 before
2 after
3 until
4 at

222 ANSWER KEY
5 1 until 5 at
2 for 6 since
3 soon 7 before
4 in 8 later
6 Your own answers

Unit 76
1 1 in 8 on
2 on 9 on
3 at 10 in
4 in 11 on
5 in 12 at
6 on 13 on
7 in 14 at
2 1 in 4 on
2 in 5 in
3 on 6 at, at, in

3 Answers from a Brazilian person
Brazil:
1 In a city.
2 In a flat.
3 Yes, Rio Guaiba.
4 It's on the second floor.
5 Yes, I do.
6 I'm learning at work, three hours a week in private lessons.

4 T T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T
8 T 9 T

5 next to 5 between
2 in front of 6 opposite
3 in front of 7 next to
4 next to

6 Answers from a German person
An old factory.
2 More houses.
3 A pub, and more houses.
4 Yes, there's a supermarket and a newsagents around the corner.
5 The neighbours' flat.
6 Another neighbour's flat.

8 1 trees 6 bus stop
2 motorway 7 mountain
3 river 8 stairs
4 shop 9 building
5 gate 10 field

9 1 under 6 through
2 into 7 out of
3 up 8 down
4 along 9 across
5 past 10 under

Unit 77
1 X... and it's also near the park.
2 X... and he understands Greek too.
3 X...
4 X... and also washed the car.
5 X...
6 X... and a park near the house as well.

2 I often eat ice cream and I also like yoghurt.
2 I enjoy watching TV but I go to the cinema a lot too.
3 I can speak English and I can understand German as well.
4 I read a lot of books but I also listen to music.
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.
6 Your own answers
4 1 because of 4 so
2 to 5 to
3 because 6 so
5 1 to 5 so
2 so 6 to
3 because of 7 because of
4 because 8 to

Unit 78
1 1 sure 4 sure
2 not sure 5 sure
3 not sure 6 not sure
2 1 If 4 when
2 When 5 when
3 if 6 if
3 1 when 4 when
2 when 5 while/when
3 while/when 6 when

4 1 Then
2 Afterwards/After that
3 Finally
4 First/First of all/Firstly
5 then/after that/afterwards

5 1 Firstly/First/First of all, she made the pasta sauce, and then she boiled the pasta. After that/Then/Afterwards/Finally, she added the sauce to the pasta.
2 Firstly/First/First of all, I did a degree in History, and then I did a Masters degree. After that/Afterwards, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
3 Firstly/First/First of all, we started our holiday in Heidelberg, and then we stayed in Munich for a few days. After that/Afterwards/Finally, we flew back to Rome.
4 Firstly/First/First of all, I made a shopping list, and then I went to the market. After that/Afterwards, I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner.
6 Answers from a Greek person
First of all I went to see a friend, and then we had lunch together. After that, I went home and watched my favourite show on the TV and after that I read a book. Late in the evening I had dinner and finally went to bed at about midnight.

Unit 79
1 1 She’s got blue eyes.
2 They’ve got a small dog.
3 I haven’t got a mobile phone.
4 He hasn’t got any money.
5 Have you got any sisters?
6 Has she got a flat in town?
2 1 Has she got any children? or Does she have any children?
2 They’ve got a lovely garden. or They have a lovely garden.
3 Has she got long hair? or Does she have long hair?
4 My sister hasn’t got a boyfriend. or My sister doesn’t have a boyfriend.
5 Have you got a computer? or Do you have a computer?
6 We haven’t got any friends here. or We don’t have any friends here.
3 1 got  4 Have
2 Do  5 Do
3 Have

4 Answers from a British person
1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
2 Yes, an Apple.
3 Yes, his name’s Barney.
4 Yes, I’ve got the Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.
5 Yes, I do. I’ve got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th>Group 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>shower</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>journey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 1 walk  2 drink  3 dinner  4 swim  5 rest  6 journey
7 1 eat/drink  2 rest/break  3 break  4 journey  5 time/day  6 weekend  7 holiday/time  8 bath
Review answer key

Basic English

Unit 1
1 twelve
2 fifteen
3 thirteen
4 thirty-four
5 eleven
6 seventy-nine
7 a hundred and twelve
8 twenty-seven
9 a hundred and seventy-five
10 two hundred and eighty-six
11 forty-one
12 nine hundred and fifty-three

Unit 2
1 twenty to two, five to two
2 midnight/midday, quarter past twelve
3 five past eleven, twenty past eleven
4 twenty past two, twenty-five to three
5 five to nine, ten past nine
6 half past six, quarter to seven
7 twenty-five past five, twenty to six

Unit 3
1 1 date, of
2 month, year
3 season
4 birthday
5 Year’s Day

Unit 4
1 1 Italy
2 Hungary
3 Mexico
4 Swiss
5 China
6 Czech
7 Egypt
8 Spanish
2 1 Poland
2 Brazilian
3 Czech Republic
4 Czech
5 Polish
6 Japanese

Unit 5
1 board
2 rubber
3 noticeboard
4 dictionary
5 pencil sharpener
6 notebook
7 CD player
8 chair
9 table/desk
10 folder

Unit 6
1 sentence
2 adverb
3 preposition
4 phrase
5 regular
6 article
7 pronoun
8 word
9 adjective
10 singular
11 irregular
12 plural

Unit 7
1 Wrong.
2 Spelling is how you write something, and pronunciation is how you say something.
3 Your own answer.
4 /hə/ /plæn/
5 It’s the opposite of right or correct.
6 No, that’s wrong.
7 A frying pan.
8 S-T-A-M-P.

People

Unit 8
1 name
2 you come
3 from
4 exactly
5 I have
6 postcode
7 do
8 ’m/am
9 are you
10 how old

REVIEW ANSWER KEY 225
Unit 9

1. MARRITAL STATUS
2. OCCUPATION
3. EXU
4. TURIC
5. GD LM
6. HARMEN
7. IN
8. EMT
9. MAILWORM
10. ROSA
11. REAPLAD
12. DRESS
13. M
14. TOUGEDAYTIME
15. UF
16. BIRTH
17. SINGLE

Unit 10

1. AGORELATIVE
2. SJOGYWESE
3. GTI
4. KIDDAUGHTER
5. END
6. DO
7. QSSYMFO
8. NTNUM
9. ATBUSAND
10. I
11. UERICUNLIDQAS
12. TIPWUNCLEAI
13. U
14. LO
15. INISTICATMU
16. OWLFISNEPHEW
17. PARUNTSJOETI
18. RWNIECDE
19. DFA

Unit 11

2. My brother is eighteen years old.
3. I am twenty years old.
4. Is your sister younger than me?
5. Is your parents are divorced.
6. Is there any five of us in your family?
7. Is she older than her brother.
8. Is he spend a lot of time together.
9. Who is the youngest in your family?

Unit 12

1. A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 B
2. 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 A 13 A

Unit 13

1. Possible answers
2. He's short and overweight. He's got short, brown hair and a moustache. He's middle-aged.
3. She's average height and average weight. She's got long, blonde, curly hair. She's a teenager/young person.
4. He's got medium-length, fair, wavy hair. He's got brown eyes and a beard. He's an adult.
5. She's attractive. She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes. She's elderly.

Unit 14

1. Positive: funny, clever, kind, sociable
2. Negative: stupid, untidy, horrible
3. Positive or negative: quiet, organized, serious

Unit 15

1. 1 went 6 together
2. 2 married 7 up
3. 3 relationship 8 get
4. 4 get 9 couple
5. 5 had

Unit 16

1. Excited 6 tired
2. Hungry 7 scared
3. Surprised 8 nervous
4. Embarrassed 9 matter
5. Worried 10 thirsty

2. Sold 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N 8 N
3. 9 N 10 P

226 REVIEW ANSWER KEY
Everyday life

Unit 17

1. We sometimes go for a walk after lunch.
2. Do you usually play tennis at the weekend?
3. I usually go to the gym, and then I go home.
4. She listens to music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping.
5. On Sundays I often stay in and watch TV.
6. I talk to my parents every evening.
7. My sister occasionally comes round and we have dinner together.
8. What time do you get to work in the morning?

Unit 18

1. socks 6. tie
2. hat 7. jumper
3. glove 8. tights
4. boots 9. T-shirt
5. watch 10. belt

2. yellow 6. red
3. green 7. orange
4. purple 8. grey
5. pink 9. pale/light blue
6. brown 10. dark blue

3. a scarf
4. a pair of jeans or some jeans
5. some ties
6. a jacket
7. a pair of trainers or some trainers
8. a pair of sandals or some sandals

Unit 19

1. take 9. cash desk
2. loose 10. medium
3. cheap 11. help
4. size 12. wrong
5. try 13. casual
6. changing 14. assistant
7. pay 15. leave
8. horrible 16. need

2. looking 7. too
3. take 8. size
4. nice 9. lovely/nice
5. on 10. them
6. room 11. pay
7. look 12. cash

Unit 20

1. 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T
2. 1. Lottery 5. price 9. earn
3. sold 6. saved 10. paid
4. bought 7. paid 11. bills
5. cost 8. in 12. fare

Unit 21

1. 1 a bit 4. a bit of
2. a lot of 5. a bit
3. a lot 6. a lot of

2. Across
3. Down
4. blows
5. ice
6. humid
7. snow
8. freezing
9. frosting
10. heavy
11. dry
12. foggy

Unit 22

1. T M X E A D Z R O S
2. G A C K A H S J O
3. Q S O I D O Y A M R
4. R I F L U L Y D Z E
5. U C J A H D E A K T
6. I K W E S B I C R H
7. T O O T H A C H E D R
8. A S V E C E G E L O
9. F H U R T S D E M A
10. R S K E V W E L L

1. I've got a headache.
2. I've got a sore throat.
3. I've got toothache.
4. I've got backache.
5. I've got flu.
6. I feel sick.
7. I don't feel well.
8. My arm hurts.
9. I've got a pain in my ear.

Unit 23

1. something 6. Take
2. Try/Take 7. could
3. tablets 8. box
4. often 9. medicine
5. take
Food and drink

Unit 24
Animal: duck, pig, sheep, lamb, cow
Meat: beef, duck, pork, lamb, ham
Fish: tuna, salmon
Seafood: crab, mussels, prawns, squid

Unit 25
1 Possible answers
red: red pepper, tomato, cherry, chilli, strawberry
yellow: banana, lemon, pineapple, melon
orange: orange, carrot, peach, mango
white/cream: garlic, mushroom, potato, cauliflower
green: peas, beans, cabbage, lettuce, cucumber, courgette

Unit 26
1 Possible answers
Packet: biscuits, pasta, rice, butter
Carton: orange juice, milk
Box: eggs, matches, chocolates
Bottle: milk, olive oil, water, orange juice, wine
Jar: jam, olives
Tin: tomatoes, tuna

2 Possible answers
1 Could I have some sugar, please?
2 I'd like some sugar, please.
3 Have you got any sugar?
4 Anything else?
5 That's it, thanks.
6 How much (sugar) would you like?

Unit 27
1 C I'd like a toasted ham sandwich please.
2 W Is that to eat here or take away?
3 C Take away. And a cheese baguette, please.
4 W Fine. Anything else?
5 C Yes, a black coffee and two teas with lemon.
6 W OK, it will be a couple of minutes.
7 W Have a seat.

Unit 28
1 fork, spoon 5 pepper
2 main course, dessert 6 vinegar
3 fried or roast or boiled 7 white
4 medium, well done 8 sparkling

1 W Are you ready to order?
C Yes, I'll have the tomato soup.
W Right. And for your main course?
C Fillet steak with chips.
2 W Do you want red wine or white wine?
C Red wine, please.
W OK. Is that a bottle or just a glass?
3 At the end of the meal
C Could I have the bill, please?
W Yes, of course.

Getting around

Unit 29
1 Does this bus go to The National Museum?
2 How many stops is it to the railway station?
3 Excuse me, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
4 How long does it take to get to the centre?
5 Does the 31 stop next to the post office?
6 Does the 9 stop outside the school?
7 Which bus do I get to Queen Street?
8 Do the buses run every ten minutes?
9 How long does it take to the centre?
10 How often do the buses run?

Unit 30
1 platform 6 journey
2 fast 7 carriage
3 miss 8 ticket
4 reserve 9 fare
5 timetable
The word in the grey squares is 'passenger'.

2 1 next train 4 leave
2 direct 5 get to
3 change 6 platform

Unit 31
1 1 The bank is on the right.
2 How do I get to the river?
3 Go along here and turn left.
4 Go straight on and turn right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
6 Yes, it's on the corner of this street.
Unit 32

1 T T T F F T T
2 F 10 T
2 1 motorway 5 lane
2 speed limit 6 traffic jams
3 overtake 7 rush hour
4 accident 8 take

Unit 33

1 ‘no parking’ 5 ‘sale’
2 ‘entrance’ or ‘way in’ 6 out of order
3 ‘no vacancies’ 7 ‘no exit’
4 ‘please do not disturb’ 8 ‘no smoking’

Places

Unit 34

1 north 6 capital
2 south 7 river
3 coast; coast 8 mountain
4 enormous 9 beach
5 border 10 famous

Unit 35

1 a modern city 5 there’s nothing to do
2 over a million 6 a quiet street
3 north-east 7 clean
4 dangerous 8 fact
2 1 of 7 on
2 population 8 famous
3 historic 9 Statue
4 palace 10 Square
5 place 11 Park
6 city 12 cosmopolitan

Unit 36

1 valley 5 grass
2 healthy 6 path
3 boat 7 lake
4 farmer 8 alone
2 1 horse 4 lonely
2 grow 5 own
3 crops 6 countryside

Unit 37

1 shopping centre
2 newsagent’s
3 chemist’s
4 hypermarket, supermarket
5 baker’s
6 bookshop
7 butcher’s
8 department store
9 music shop

Unit 38

1 1 bathroom 5 garage
2 kitchen 6 lift
3 bedroom 7 garden
4 study 8 home
2 1 f 2 b 3 a 4 g 5 i 6 h 7 c 8 e

Unit 39

1 dishwasher, sink 5 cupboard
2 washing machine 6 fridge
3 bin 7 freezer
4 microwave 8 oven
2 1 put 4 Do, empty
2 Put, turn 5 cook
3 turn, out

Unit 40

1 Bedroom: wardrobe, blanket, sheet, chest of drawers, single bed, desk
   Bathroom: towel, toilet, shower, washbasin, bath, bidet
2 1 put on; take off, make-up or tissues
   2 have, a razor or an electric razor
   3 clean, a toothbrush and toothpaste
   4 do or brush, a brush or a comb
   5 have, soap
Unit 41

1 1 Picture 1 has got cushions, but picture 2 hasn't.
2 Picture 1 has got one armchair, picture 2 has got two.
3 Picture 1 has got a radiator, but picture 2 hasn't.
4 Picture 1 has got two lamps, but picture 2 has got one.
5 Picture 1 has got a picture on the wall, but picture 2 hasn't.
6 Picture 1 has got a rug on the floor, but picture 2 hasn't.
7 Picture 2 has got a fireplace, but picture 1 hasn't.
8 Picture 2 has got a carpet, but picture 1 hasn't.
9 Picture 2 has got a light, but picture 1 hasn't.
10 Picture 2 has got a coffee table, but picture 1 hasn't.

Study and work

Unit 42

1 1 biology 7 geography
2 history 8 chemistry
3 literature 9 design and
4 physics technology
5 maths/music 10 modern languages
6 art
2 1 2 a 3 g 4 e 5 i 6 b 7 f 8 h 9 d
3 1 badly 4 terrible/bad
2 failed 5 nursery
3 state 6 best

Unit 43

1 1 science 5 again
2 lasts 6 degree
3 terms 7 research
4 do/write 8 PhD or Doctor of Philosophy
2 People: undergraduate, engineer, lawyer, politician
Subjects: medicine, economics, architecture, business studies, politics
Phrases: do research, do a degree, write an essay

Unit 44

Possible answers
1 a dentist, a vet, a businessman, a businesswoman
2 a dentist, a nurse, a vet, a builder, a hairdresser
3 a businessman or businesswoman, a pilot, a shop assistant
4 retired, unemployed
5 a pilot, a nurse, a police officer, a soldier
6 a businessman, a businesswoman

Unit 45

1 1 j 2 h 3 a 4 g 5 c 6 i 7 e 8 d 9 f
2 1 in 4 spend
2 1 time 5 earn/get
3 a 6 colleagues

Unit 46

1 1 laptop 5 backup copy
2 keyboard 6 hard drive
3 mouse mat 7 printout
4 memory stick 8 webcam
2 1 copy 5 save
2 1 screen 6 print
3 cut 7 paste
4 mouse
The word in the grey squares is 'document'.

Unit 47

1 chatroom, broadband, download, website, online, search engine, inbox, junk mail
2 1 attachment 7 broadband
2 1 message 8 internet
3 online 9 receive
4 delete 10 use
5 fast 11 visit
6 send

Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1 1 I love it, it's my favourite thing, it's wonderful, I think it's fantastic
2 I quite enjoy it, it's quite enjoyable
3 I think it's OK
4 I'm not very keen on it, I don't like it very much, I'm not very interested in it
5 I really hate it
2 1 interested 4 to
2 on 5 boring
3 driving 6 quite likes
Unit 49
1. volleyball, tennis, basketball
2. rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, tennis, basketball
3. football, rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, basketball
4. a) tennis  b) ice hockey
2. 1 matches  4 scored
    2 drew  5 goals
    3 lost  6 top

Unit 50
1. favourite, go  4 instrument
    2. does  5 classical
    3. repairs  6 do, spend
2. 1 spending  4 play
    2. going  5 arranging
    3. games

Unit 51
1. Pop and rock: band, lead singer, drummer, single, guitar
   Classical music: orchestra, violin, conductor, composer, cello
2. Possible answers
   1. Bryn Terfel is a famous opera singer in my country.
   2. Chris Martin is lead singer with Coldplay.
   3. Sir Simon Rattle is a famous conductor.
   4. The London Symphony Orchestra comes from my country.
   5. Alfred Brendel is a great pianist.
   6. Sergeant Pepper by the Beatles is one of my favourite albums.
   7. ‘Beautiful liar’ by Beyoncé and Shakira is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
   8. Charlie Watts is the drummer with the Rolling Stones.

Unit 52
1. war, violent  4 thriller, exciting
    2. comedy, funny  5 love, romantic
    3. horror, frightening
2. 1 about  5 reviews
    2. in  6 director
    3. stars  7 see
    4. actor

Unit 53
1. I usually buy a newspaper every day to find (1) out what has happened, but yesterday I listened (2) to the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it (3) on TV. As usual most (4) of it was bad news: more than twenty people (5) died in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting (6) programme about a television news (7) reporter who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.
2. 1 c  2 e  3 d  4 f  5 b  6 a

Holidays
Unit 54
1. arrange  6 book
    2. currency  7 pack
    3. hire  8 flight
    4. go abroad  9 accommodation
    5. holiday

Unit 55
1. 1 h  2 a  3 d  4 j  5 g  6 f  7 i  8 k
    9 b  10 c
2. 1 stayed  5 delicious
    2. suite  6 night
    3. facilities  7 parking
    4. staff  8 book

Unit 56
1. 1 i  2 e  3 g  4 h  5 b  6 a  7 d  8 f  9 c
2. 1 trolley  6 got
    2. ticket  7 fastened
    3. scales  8 landed
    4. flight  9 collected
    5. delayed  10 went/walked

Unit 57
1. We flew to Marseille ...
    2. ... we had to get a bus to Cassis ...
    3. ... holiday resort by the sea ...
    4. ... We rented an apartment ...
    5. ... we went for a walk ...
    6. ... we sunbathed on the beach ...
    7. ... an hour or so ...
    8. ... was perfect for the whole week ...

Unit 58
1. We're going on a tour of the city this afternoon.
    2. Did you go sightseeing in Paris?
    3. We always get lost in a new place.
    4. She took a lot of photos on her holiday.
    5. Did you visit the museum? (You're at the museum)
    6. There were lots of typical tourists.
    7. There's a good exhibition at the art gallery.
    8. Have you got a guidebook about London, please?
Unit 59
1  post office 7 per cent
2  postcode 8 parcel
3  postman/ 9 currency
4  postwoman 10 cash machine
5  postbox 11 change
6  put, put 12 commission
2  send 4 exchange rate
2  envelope/letter/parcel 5 into
3  deliver 6 bureau, change

Social English

Unit 60
1  hope to see you 5 shake hands
2  again 6 see you soon
2  how are you? 7 nice to meet you
3  not bad 8 hi there
4  how do you do? 9 see you later

Unit 61
1 happy birthday
2 have a good weekend
3 congratulations
4 good luck
5 well done
6 welcome home
7 have a good holiday
8 Happy New Year

Unit 62
1 How many? 6 How long?
2 Why? 7 Whose?
3 How far? 8 Which?
4 How often? 9 Who?
5 Where?
2 1 How 4 often
2 2 do 5 long
3 3 does 6 kind of

Unit 63
1 1 you, I 6 I
2 1 I 7 I
3 you 8 you
4 you 9 you
5 I
2 no problem, of course, go ahead, I'm afraid I need it, that's fine

Unit 64
1 A Would you like to have lunch tomorrow? Or do you want to have lunch tomorrow?
B I'm afraid but I can't. Or I'm sorry but I can't.
2 A Would you like to go skiing this weekend? Or do you want to go skiing this weekend?
B Yes, that sounds fun! Or That would be fun.
3 A Would you like to come round here for a drink tonight?
B Yes, I'd love to, but I'm busy.
4 A Do you want to come round for a meal at the weekend?
B I'm sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65
1 shall 5 about
2 maybe 6 idea
3 could 7 let
4 sure

Unit 66
1 Would you like a sandwich? Do you want a drink? Or Do you want a sandwich? Would you like a drink?
2 Do you need a hand? Do you want some help? Or Do you need some help? Do you want a hand?
3 No, I'm fine. Thanks. No, don't worry.
4 Thanks a lot. Thank you very much.
5 Let me pay for the coffee. Shall I do that for you?
6 That's very kind of you. Thank you very much.
Unit 67
Possible answers
1 A. I’m sorry, I forgot to post your letter.
   B. Never mind, as it doesn’t matter, or
   Don’t worry.
2 A. I’m sorry I’m late.
   B. That’s OK, or Don’t worry.
3 A. I’m really sorry, I’ve broken a cup.
   B. That’s OK, as it doesn’t matter.
4 A. Sorry, could you repeat that, please?
   B. Sure, no problem.

Unit 68
1 opinion 4 prefer
2 excellent 5 personally
3 disagree 6 a waste of

Unit 69
1 ring/call, at the moment
2 speaking
3 ring/phone, just a moment
4 sent me a text

Unit 70
1 narrow 4 rich
2 dead 5 asleep
3 noisy
2 helpful 5 noisy
2 common 6 unnecessary
3 useless 7 clear
4 strange 8 annoying

The word in grey is ‘necessary’.

Unit 71
1 We couldn’t play the match with only ten players.
2 He lives in Italy, but still speaks English most of the time.
3 The food is absolutely fantastic in that restaurant.
4 Max didn’t like the film but I thought it was quite good.
5 The last film was good, but this is even better.
6 My English is getting a bit better.

Unit 72
Across Down
1 been 1 went
2 read 2 seen
3 took 3 bought
4 put 5 done
11 found 7 known
13 slept 8 ran
14 sent 10 thought
15 forgot 12 left
13 sat
14 spent

Unit 73
1 I grew up in a village.
2 Why don’t you sit down?
3 I must find out their address.
4 She fell over in the street.
5 Did you go out last night?
6 Could you turn on the light? or Could you turn the light on?
7 Look it up in your dictionary.
8 Could I try them on?
2 gave up 4 take off
2 going up 5 get on (well)
3 go back 6 carry on

Unit 74
In: December, summer, 2007, the afternoon, the 21st century
At: three o’clock, half past five, breakfast, the weekend, midnight
On: Monday morning, the sixth of March, my birthday, Tuesday, Friday evening

Unit 75
1 last week 5 this evening
2 two days ago 6 tomorrow morning
3 yesterday 7 tomorrow evening
4 last night 8 next Monday
9 in ten days’ time
2 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I found an apartment or found somewhere to live.
2 I met a Spanish man after I got a job in (the south of) Portugal.
3 I’ve lived in the house I bought since I got married.
4 I’ve lived in Portugal for five years.
5 Soon I’m going to have a baby.
6 At the moment we’re preparing a room for the baby.
Unit 76
1 1 over 7 next to
2 past 8 into
3 near 9 out of
4 above 10 opposite
5 down 11 between
6 across 12 through

2 1 near, above, next to, opposite
2 past, across, into, out of, through
(near' and 'next to' are also possible)

3 In: my town, Germany, the countryside, the bedroom
At: school, home, a football match, work
On: the table, the wall, the coast, the second floor

Unit 77
1 1 g 2 i 3 e 4 h 5 f 6 d 7 a 8 b
2 1 because of 4 because
2 to 5 so
3 also 6 as well

Unit 78
1 1 When you’re travelling on a long flight, always wear comfortable clothes.
2 If you can choose your seat on the plane, sit near the front where it’s quiet.
3 While/When you are waiting for the flight, sit in the departure lounge.
4 When you get off, don’t leave anything on the plane.
5 If you feel ill during the flight, tell the airline staff.
6 If you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy.

2 1 first of all 4 After that or Then
2 while 5 finally
3 Then or After that 6 if

Unit 79
1 1 have 5 didn’t
2 a 6 time
3 Did you have 7 a rest
4 Have 8 was, had

2 1 We had a break for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
2 We had something to eat at the beach.
3 My sister’s/has got blonde hair.
4 I was hot, so I had a shower/bath before dinner.
5 We had a terrible/bad day at work. I hate my job!
6 Have a lovely holiday/time in the Caribbean!
7 I’d like to go on holiday, but I don’t have any money.
8 On Sunday, we just had a rest and did nothing.

Unit 80
1 1 arrive 9, obtain 2, buy 7, travel by 8, receive 4 and 6, become 3 and 5

2 Answers from a Hungarian person
1 No, I’m happy in my current job.
2 Yes, I get very tired when it’s hot.
3 I get about one or two messages a day.
4 No.
5 Tickets to see my favourite actor at the theatre.
6 I bought them from a shop in the centre of town.
7 I never get the train to work, I always walk.
8 I got home at about ten o’clock last night.
### Spotlight boxes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>Capital letters</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>Saying and writing dates</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>People from a country</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10B</td>
<td>How old are you?</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11A</td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13A</td>
<td>thin, fat, ugly</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13C</td>
<td>Other phrases for age</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14A</td>
<td>What's ... like?</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14B</td>
<td>really</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15A</td>
<td>relationship</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15B</td>
<td>each other</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16B</td>
<td>get + adjective</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17A</td>
<td>usually, and normally</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17C</td>
<td>every and all</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18A</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18C</td>
<td>Plural nouns</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19B</td>
<td>too and very</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19C</td>
<td>I'll take it/I'll leave it</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Money</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21A</td>
<td>a lot of/a bit of</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22A</td>
<td>be ill/sick</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22B</td>
<td>should + verb</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Asking for things in a chemist's</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25B</td>
<td>sailed</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26A</td>
<td>Uncountable nouns</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26B</td>
<td>tin and can</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26C</td>
<td>how much and how many</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Yes, please? and Yes, please.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28C</td>
<td>another or some more</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How long does it take?</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30A</td>
<td>last</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30B</td>
<td>book something in advance</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Excuse me ...</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35A</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36B</td>
<td>alone and lonely</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37A</td>
<td>Noun + shop</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38B</td>
<td>flat, house and home</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39B</td>
<td>do + noun</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40B</td>
<td>have + noun</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42A</td>
<td>be good at something</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42B</td>
<td>at (the age of) ...</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42C</td>
<td>exam (examination)</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43A</td>
<td>How long does it last?</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>alan with jobs</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45B</td>
<td>Spend time doing something</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46A</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48A</td>
<td>like/love/hate + -ing</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48B</td>
<td>interesting/interested</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48B</td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51B</td>
<td>by</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52A</td>
<td>What kind of ...?</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53B</td>
<td>watch, see, listen, hear</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>might + verb</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55B</td>
<td>That's a shame/What a shame</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>should + verb</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60A</td>
<td>Introductions</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60B</td>
<td>See you ...</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>cheers</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62A</td>
<td>whose and belong to</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62B</td>
<td>which or what?</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63A</td>
<td>Being polite</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63B</td>
<td>lend and borrow</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Would you like to ... or Do you want to ...?</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Saying no</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66A</td>
<td>Saying thank you</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66B</td>
<td>let me + verb</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>(I'm) sorry</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69A</td>
<td>Saying phone numbers</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70A</td>
<td>Position of adjectives</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71B</td>
<td>Gradable and ungradable</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71B</td>
<td>adjectives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72B</td>
<td>ever</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73A</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75B</td>
<td>for and since</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79A</td>
<td>have and have got</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a.m. /æt'eni/ 2
ATM /'æt em/ 59
able /'ebəl/ 51
about (= approximately) /ə'baut/ 1
about (= the subject is) /ə'baut/ 52
above /'əbəv/ 76
abroad /ə'brəud/ 54
absolutely /'æbsələtli/ 71
accept /ək'sept/ 66
access as in Internet access /ə'zes/ 55
accessories /ək'sesəris/ 18
accident /ə' sentimental/ 29
accommodation /ə'kəmənɪd/ 54
account as in bank account /ə'kaunt/ 20
across /ə'kros/ 76
action /'æksʃən/ 52
actor /'æk'tər/ 52
actress /'æk'trəs/ 52
address /ə'dres/ 8, 9, 47, 59
adjective /'ædʒəktɪv/ 6
adult /'ædəlt/ 13
advance as in advance /'ædvəns/ 30
advert /'ædvərt/ 6
advertisement /'ædvərtɪzmənt/ 53
advice /'ædvıs/ 15
afraid as in I'm afraid /ə'frend/ 63, 64
afraid as in I'm afraid not /ə'frend/ 55
Africa /'æfrɪkə/ 4
after /'əftər/ 2, 75
after that /'əftər ət/ 78
afternoon /'əftərnɔn/ 2, 60
afterwards /'əftərwɔrds/ 78
again /'əgen/ 43, 60
against /'əɡənst/ 49
ago /'əgoʊ/ 75
agree, agree with someone /ə'gri/ 68
ahead as in go ahead /ə'hed/ 63
air conditioning /eər kən'diʃən/ 55
airline /'eə'lайн/ 45
airport /'eəpɔrt/ 56
aisle seat /'eɪsəl ˈsiːt/ 56
album /'ælbəm/ 51
alive /ə'laɪv/ 70
all /əl/ 17, 53
all as in first of all /əl/ 78
all as in that's all /əl/ 26
all right /əl ˈrʌt/ 63, 67
almost /ə'məʊst/ 2
alone /ə'ləʊn/ 36
along /ə'loʊn/ 31, 76
also /'ælsəʊ/ 77
altogether /'ɔltəˈɹəʊðər/ 20
always /'ɔlvər/ 17
American /'æmərɪkən/ 4
and /ənd/ 77
and as in and you /ənd, ənd/ 61
angry /'æŋgrɪ/ 16
animal /'ænɪml/ 24
ankle /'æŋkl/ 12
annoying /'ənəʊɪŋ/ 70
another /'ənəˈðər/ 28
answer the phone /'ænsər ðə fəʊn/ 45
antiseptic /'æntɪsɛptɪk/ 23
anything else /'ɛnθɪn ˈels/ 26
apartment /ə'pɑrtnənt/ 57
apologize /əˈpɑlədʒaɪz/ 67
apple /'æpl/ 25
appointment /əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 75
Arabic /'ærləbɪk/ 4
architect /'ɑrʃɪtɛkt/ 43
architecture /'ɑrʃətɛktʃər/ 43
area /'eərə/ 4, 36, 69
Argentinian /'ɑrgətɪniən/ 4
arm /ɑrm/ 12
armchair /'ɑrmʃeə(r)/ 41
arrange as in flower arranging /'ɑrreɪnɪŋ/ 50
art /ɑrt/ 42
art gallery /'ɑrt ɡeləri/ 58
article /'ɑrtɪkl/ 53
article as in (an) definite article /'ɑrtɪkl/ 7
as well /'æs ˈwel/ 77
Asia /'æsɪə/ 4
asleep /'æslɛp/ 70
at.as in be good at /ət, əz/ 42
at (= place) /ət, əz/ 76
at (= time) /ət, ət/ 2, 74
attachment /'ætætʃmənt/ 47
attractive /'ætraktɪv/ 13
aubergine /ə'bɔːrɡɪn/ 25
aunt /ənt/ 10
Australia /əustrələs/ 4
Australian /əustrəˈlɪən/ 4
autumn /'ɔtəm/ 3
average /'ævərɪdʒ/ 13
avocado /əˈvɑːkədəʊ/ 25
awake /ˈɔːwk/ 70
awful /ˈɔːf(ə)/ 19
BA (Bachelor of Arts) /ˈbiːkeɪ ər/ 43
BSc (Bachelor of Science) /ˈbiːkeɪ ər ˌskeɪns/ 43
baby /ˈbeɪbi/ 13, 15
back /bæk/ 12
backache /ˈbeɪkəch/ 22
backup /ˈbeɪkɑp/ 46
baking /ˈbeɪkɪŋ/ 24
bad as in not bad /bæd/ 60
badly as in do badly /ˈbeɪdli/ 42
bag /bæɡ/ 5, 56
baggage /ˈbægɪdʒ/ 56
baguette /ˈbaɡət/ 27
baker's /ˈbeɪkrz/ 37
balcony /ˈbælkənri/ 38
ball /bɔːl/ 49
bananas /ˈbænənəz/ 25
band /bænd/ 51
bank account /ˈbæŋk əˈkaʊnt/ 20
bar /ˈbɑːr/ 26
basement /ˈbeɪznəmt/ 38
basket /ˈbæskət/ 37
basket (used in basketball) /ˈbæskɪt/ 49
basketball /ˈbæskɪtˈbɔːl/ 49
bath /bɑːθ/ 40, 79
bathroom /ˈbɑːθrʊm/ 38
battery /ˈbeɪtəri/ 69
be /bɪ/ 16
beach /bɪtʃ/ 34, 57
beans /biːnz/ 25
beard /bɜːrd/ 13
beat /biːt/ 49
beautiful /bɪˈjuːtɪfl/ 13
because /biˈkɔz, -keɪz/ 77
because of /ˈbiːkɔz ˌəv/ 77
before /bɪˈfɔːr/ 75
beginning /ˈbɪɡɪnɪŋ/ 46
behind /ˈbɪhind/ 76
believe /ˈbɪlv/ 53
bell /bɛl/ 33
belong /ˈbɛl(ə)ŋ/ 62
below /bəˈlaʊ/ 76
belt /bɛlt/ 18
belt as in seat belt /bɛlt/ 56
best /best/ 42
best friend /ˈbest ˈfrend/ 15
between /ˈbɪtʃn/ 7
between /ˈbɪtʃn/ 76
bicycle /ˈbaɪsɪkl/ 36
bidet /ˈbɪdɪt/ 40
big /bɪɡ/ 19
bike /bайk/ 36
bill /bɪl/ 20, 28
bin as in rubbish bin /bɪn/ 39
biology /ˌbaɪəˈlɑːdʒi/ 42
bird /bɜːd/ 36
birth as in date of birth /bɜːθ/ 9
birthday /ˈbɜːθdeɪ/ 3, 61
biscuits /ˈbɪskɪts/ 26
bit as in a bit, a bit of /bɪt/ 21
bitter /ˈbɪtər/ 25
black /blæk/ 13, 18
black coffee /ˈblæk ˈkɒfɪ/ 27
blanket /ˈblæŋkət/ 40
block of flats /ˈblɒk əv ˈflæts/ 38
blonde /ˈblɒnd/ 13
block /bloc/ 21
blue /bluː/ 16
board n /bɔːd/ 5
board pen /ˈbɔːd ˈpen/ 5
boarding /ˈbɔːdɪŋ/ 56
boarding card /ˈbɔːdɪŋ ˈkɑːrd/ 56
boat /bəʊt/ 36
boiled /ˈbɔɪld/ 28
boiling /ˈbɔɪlɪŋ/ 16
book v /bʊk/ 30, 54, 55
bookshelf /ˈbʊkʃelf/ 41
bottles /ˈbɒtlz/ 18
border /ˈbɜːrdər/ 34
boring /ˈbɔːrɪŋ/ 48
horn as in he horn /hɔːn/ 10
borrow /ˈbɔːrər/ 63
boss /bɔːs/ 44
bottle /ˈbɑːtl/ 26, 28
bottom (= part of the body) /ˈbɒtəm/ 12
bottom (= the lowest part) /ˈbɒtəm/ 59
bowl /ˈbɔʊl/ 28
box /ˈbɒks/ 26
box as in letter box /ˈbɒks/ 59
boyfriend /ˈbɔɪfrend/ 10, 15
Brazil /ˈbɹəzɪəl/ 4
Brazilian /ˈbɹəzɪən/ 4
breakfast /ˈbrekfəst/ 17, 79
break v /ˈbrek/ 11, 67
break /ˈbrep/ 79
brunch /ˈbrʌntʃ/ 21
bridge /ˈbrɪdʒ/ 35
bring /briŋ/ 63
Britain /ˈbrɪtn/ 4
broadband /ˈbrəʊdbænd/ 47
brother /’brʌðər/ 10
brother-in-law /’brʌðər in lɔw/ 10
brown /’brʌn/ 13, 18, 27
brush /’brʌʃ/ 40
builder /’bʌldfər/ 44
building /’bʌldɪŋ/ 35, 45
bureau de change /ˈbjuərəʊ də ‘ʃeɪn/ 59
bus /bʌs/ 29
bus driver /’bʌs drɪvə/ 44
bus stop /’bʌs stop/ 29
business studies /’bɪznəs stədɪz/ 43
businessman /’bɪznəsmən/ 43, 44
businesswoman /’bɪznəswʊmən/ 43, 44
busy (= a lot of things happening) /’bəzɪ/ 32, 35
busy (= a lot of things to do) /’bəzɪ/ 64
busy (= engaged) /’bəzɪ/ 69
but /bʌt, bat/ 77
butcher’s /’bʌtʃəz/ 37
butter /’bʌtə/ 26
buy /bʌɪ/ 20
by /bʌɪ/ 51
bye bye, bye /’bai bai, baɪ/ 60

CD /siː/ 5
CD player /siː ‘dɪ plɛn(r)/ 5
cabbage /’keɪbɪdɪ/ 25
cake /keɪk/ 26
call as last call /keɪzl/ 56
call v /keɪl/ 69
call someone back /keɪl ˈsʌməm ˈbæk/ 69
called /keɪl/ 7
camera as In speed camera /’kæmərə/ 69
camping /’kæmɪŋ/ 50
can n (= container) /kæn/ 26
can = permission /’kæn, kan/ 63
can v (= request) /kæn, kan/ 59, 63, 69
Canada /’keɪnədɪə/ 4
Canadian /’keɪnədɪən/ 4
Canterese /’keɪntəriːz/ 4
capital /’kæpɪtəl/ 14
cappuccino /’kæpətʃiːnɔ/ 27
car park /’kɑːr pɔːk/ 32
card as In bonding card /kɑrd/ 56
card as In credit card /kɑrd/ 19
card as In debit card /kɑrd/ 20
cards /kɑrdz/ 50
carpet /’kærpt/ 41
carriage /’kærɪdʒ/ 30
carrot /’kærət/ 25
carry /’kærɪ/ 11
carry on (with something) /’kærɪ n (wɪð ˈsʌmθɪŋ)/ 73
carton /’kɑːtɔn/ 26
cartoon /’kɑːtən/ 52
cash n /’keɪʃ/ 20
cash desk /’keɪʃ dɛsk/ 19
cash machine /’keɪʃ məˈʃiːn/ 59
cassette player /’keɪset plɛr(r)/ 5
castle /’kɑːzəl/ 35
casual /’kæzjʊəl/ 19
catch /kætʃ/ 30
cathedral /’kæθədrəl/ 35
cauliflower /’kɒlɪflaʊə(r)/ 25
celling /’sɪldɪŋ/ 41
celebrity /ˈsɛlbrəti/ 53
cellist /’sɛlɪst/ 51
cello /’sɛləʊ/ 51
Central America /’sentrəl ˈamerɪkə/ 4
central heating /’sentrəl ˈhɪtɪŋ/ 55
centre as In shopping centre /’sɛntər(r)/ 37
centre as In town centre /’sɛntər(r)/ 38
century /’sɛntəri/ 74
certainly /’sɜːtəli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
certainly = /’kərtənli/ 28
check in /tʃek ɪn, tʃek m dɛsk/ 56
checkout /tʃekɔut/ 37
check /tʃek/ 12
cheers /tʃiəz/ 61
cheese /tʃiːz/ 26
tchef /tʃef/ 44
tchemist /tʃɛmɪst/ 22
chemist /’tʃɛmɪstʃə/ 22, 23, 37
tchemistry /’tʃɛmɪstɹɪ/ 42
tcheque /tʃeɪk/ 20
tcherry /tʃɛri/ 25
tchest /tʃest/ 12
tchest of drawers /tʃest ɒv ‘drɔːz/ 40
tchicken /tʃɪkən/ 24
tchild /tʃaɪld/ 13
tchildren /tʃiːldrən/ 8, 13
tchill /tʃɪl/ 25
tchin /tʃɪn/ 12
China /’tʃaɪna/ 4
Chinese /’tʃænɪʃ/ 4
tchips /tʃɪps/ 28
tchocolate /tʃɒklət/ 26
choose /tʃuːz/ 37
Christmas /’krisməs/ 3
church /tʃɜːf/ 35
day as in have a nice day /deɪ/ 61
daytime /ˈdeɪtaɪm/ 9
dead /dɪd/ 70
debt card /ˈdɛbɛt ˈkɑrd/ 20
declare as in nothing to declare /ˈdɪkla(r)/ 33
definite article /ˈdefɪnit/ 6
degree /ˈdiɡri/ 43
delayed /ˈdeɪlid/ 56
delete /ˈdiːleɪt/ 42
deli /ˈdeli, ˈdelɪ/ 17
delicious /ˈdɛliʃəs/ 55
deliver /ˈdɛlivər/ 37, 59
dentist /ˈdentɪst/ 44
departed /ˈdɛpt/ 36
department store /ˈdɛptmənt stɔːr/ 37
departures /ˈdɛpərtoʊr/ 56
design /ˈdɛzɪn/ 45
design and technology /ˈdezən ənd ˈtekənələdʒi/ 42
desk /desk/ 5, 40
desk as in cash desk /desk/ 19
dessert /ˈdɛzərt/ 28
details /ˈdɛtəlz/ 55
diary /ˈdaɪəri/ 75
dictionary /ˈdɪkʃənəri/ 5
die /daɪ/ 53
difference /ˈdɪfərnəs/ 7
different /ˈdɪfərənt/ Starter
dining room /ˈdaɪnən rʊm/ 38
dinner /ˈdɪnər/ 17, 79
direct /ˈdɛrɪkt, dər- , dər-/ 30
director /ˈdɪrəktər/ 36, 52
dirty /ˈdɜrti/ 35
disc agree /ˈdɪskrɪg/ 68
disaster /ˈdaɪzastr/ 53
discuss /ˈdɪskəs/ 45
dishwasher /ˈdaɪʃwɔːsr/ 39
disk /disk/ 48
disturb as in please do not disturb /ˈdɪstərb/ 33
divorced /ˈdaɪvərd/ 15
do as in do a degree, do research /daʊ/ 43
do as in do homework /daʊ/ 42
do as in do the shopping, do the ironing /daʊ/ 17, 37, 39
do as in do your hair /daʊ/ 40
do as in How do you do? /daʊ/ 60
do as in What do you do? /daʊ/ 8, 17
do the ironing /daʊ ˈɪrənɪŋ/ 39
do the shopping /daʊ ˈʃɒpɪŋ/ 17, 37, 39
do well /dəʊ ˈwel/ 42
doctor /ˈdɒktər/ 43
document /ˈdɒkjʊmənt/ 46
doug /dɔːɡ/ 36
don’t worry /ˈdɔːnt wʌri/ 66
doors as in front door /ˈdoorz/ 38
double /ˈdʌbl/ 7
double room /ˈdʌbl rʊm/ 55
don’t as in go down /daʊn/ 76
download /ˈdaʊnˈləʊd/ 47, 51
downstairs /ˈdaʊnsteəz/ 38
draw /druː/ 49
drawers as in chest of drawers /ˈdrɔːəz/ 40
drawing /ˈdruːrɪŋ/ 50
dress /drest/ 18
drink n /drɪŋk/ 79
drive /draid/ 32
driver /ˈdрайvər/ 44
drop /drɔp/ 11
drums /ˈdrʌmz/ 51
drummer /ˈdrʌmər/ 51
dry /draɪ/ 21
duck /dʌk/ 24
during the week /dəˈjuːən ə ˈwiːk/ 17
each /iːtʃ/ 20
each other /iːtʃ ˈəʊðər/ 15
ear /niə/ 12
earby as in early twenties /ˈniə/ 17
earn /ɛrn/ 20, 45
east /east/ 34, 35
Easter /ˈɛstər/ 63
economics /ɨkəνəˈmɪks/ 43
economist /ˈkɛnəməst| 43
egg /eg/ 26
Egypt /ˈɪɡpɪt/ 4
Egyptian /ˈɪɡpɪjən/ 4
elephant /ˈɪlkəfənt| 13
electric razor /ˈɛlektrɪk ˈrezər/ 40
else as in anything else /ˈels/ 26
email address /ˈiːmɔɪl ˈɑrˈdiːs/ 9, 47
embarrassed /ˈɛmˈbærəst/ 16
empty adj, v /ˈempti/ 39
en suite /ˈen ˈswiːt/ 55
end /end/ 46
engaged /ˈɛŋɡeɪd/ 69
engine as in search engine /ˈendʒɪn/ 47
engineer /ˈendʒɪnɪə(r)/ 43
engineering /ˈendʒɪnɪərɪŋ/ 43
England /ˈɛŋɡlənd/ 4
English /ˈɛŋglɪʃ/ 4
enjoy /ˈɛnˈdʒɔɪ/ 48
enjoyable /ˈɛnˌdʒɔɪəbəl/ 48
enormous /ˈɛnəurməs/ 34
enter /ˈɛntər/ 20
entrance /ˈɛntrəns/ 33
entry as in no entry /ˈɛntri/ 33
envelope /ˈɛnvləʊp/ 59
equipment /ˈɪkˈwɪpmen| 49
especially /ˈspeʃəli/ 71
espresso /ˌɛsˈpreshəʊ/ 27
essay /ˈesər/ 43
Europe /ˌjuːrəp/ 4
even /ˈɛvən/ 71
evening /ˈɛvənɪŋ/ 260, 75
event /ˈɛvent/ 53
ever /ˈɛvər/ 72
every /ˈɛvəri/ 17, 29
exactly /ˈækˈzæktli/ 8
exams /ˈeθəmz/ 42
ex-boyfriend /ˈeksˈbɔɪfrɛnd/ 15
excellent /ˈekˈsələnt/ 68
exchange rate /ˈekˈʃeindʒ rɛt/ 59
excited /ˈeksətɪd/ 16
exciting /ˈeksətɪŋ/ 52
excessive /ˈeksəsɪsɪv/ 29, 31
ex-girlfriend /ˈeksˈɡɜːrlfrɛnd/ 15
ex-husband /ˈeksˈhʌζbʌnd/ 15
exit /ˈɛkzɪt/ 33
expensive /ˈɪkspənsiv/ 19
explain /ˈɪkˈspliːn/ 7
extremely /ˈɪkˈstɹɪmlɪ/ 71
ex-wife /ˈeksˈwɪf/ 15
eye /aɪ/ 12

face /feɪs/ 12
facilities /ˈfæsɪlətɪz/ 55
fact /fækt/ 35
factory /ˈfæktəri/ 45
fail an exam /fæl ən ən ˈæθəmz/ 42
fall over /fɔld əˈvaʊər/ 11, 73
false /fɔls, fols/ Starter
family name /ˈfæməli nɛm/ 8
family tree /ˈfæməli ˈtriː/ 10
famous /ˈfəməs/ 34, 51
fantastic /ˈfæntəstɪk/ 48
far /fər/ 32, 62
Far East /fər ɛst/ 4
fare /ˈfɛəri/ 20, 30
farm /fɔːrm/ 36
farmer /ˈfærma(r)/ 16
fast /fɑːst/ 30, 47
fasten /ˈfɑːsten/ 56
fat /fæt/ 13
father /ˈfɑːθər/ 10
favourite /ˈfɒvərɪt/ 48
feel /fyʊl/ 16, 22
feet /fet/ 12
few es in a few /fyʊs/ 36
field /fɪld/ 56
fill /fɪl/ 37
film /fɪlm/ 17, 52
final score /ˈfɪnəl ˈskɔːr/ 49
finally /ˈfɪnəli/ 78
find /fɪnd/ 54
find out /fɪnd ˈaʊt/ 53, 73
fine (= OK) /fain/ 60, 63
flippers /ˈflɪpəz/ 12
finish /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ 17, 63
fireplace /ˈfaɪəplɛs/ 41
first adv /fɜːst/ 78
first adj /fɜːst/ 8
first half /fɜːst hɑːf/ 49
first of all /fɜːst əv ˈɔːl/ 78
firstly /ˈfɜːstli/ 78
fish /fɪʃ/ 24
fishing /ˈfɪʃɪŋ/ 50
fit /fɪt/ 19
flat adj /flat/ 69
flat n /flat/ 38
flattened /ˈflætntɪd/ 15
flight /flaɪt/ 54, 56
flight closed /flət ˈkloʊzd/ 56
floor (= level of a building) /flɔːr/ 38
floor (= surface you walk on) /flɔːr/ 41
flower /ˈflaʊər/ 36
flower arranging /ˈflɔːər əˈræŋɪŋ/ 50
flu /fljuː/ 22
fly /flaɪ/ 57
frog /froɡ/ 21
foggy /ˈfɒɡi/ 21
folder (= for holding papers) /ˈfoʊldər/ 5
folder (= on a computer) /ˈfəʊldər/ 46
foot /fʊt/ 12
football /ˈfʊتبɔːl/ 49
for /fɔː, fər/ 75
for a while /fər ə ˈwɜːzl/ 22
forecast as in weather forecast /ˈfɔːrkɑːst/ 53
foreign /fəˈrɒrni/ 54
forename /ˈfɔrenəm/ 9
forget /fəˈɡet/ 67
fork /fɔrk/ 28
fortunately /ˌfɔtʃəˈneltɪ/ 43
forward /ˈfɔrward/ 47
France /frɑːns/ 4
free /friː/ 20
freeze /ˈfrɪzn/ 39
freezing /ˈfrɪznɪŋ/ 16, 21
French /frɑːNZ/ 4
fresh /frɛʃ/ 25
fresh food /ˈfrɪʃ ˈfɹʊd/ 36
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 39
fried /frɪd/ 28
friend as in best closest friend /frend/ 15
friendily /ˈfrendli/ 34
frightened /ˈfrɪtntid/ 16
frightening /ˈfrɪtnɪŋ/ 52
from (= origin) /fɾəm, frəm/ 4
from (= time) /fɾəm, frəm/ 45
front door /ˈfrʌnt ˈdɔːr/ 38
frozen /ˈrɔzən/ 25
frying pan /ˈfɹɪnɪŋ ˈpæn/ 39
full /fol/ 37, 39  
full time /'fəlt ˈtami/ 45  
fun /fʌn/ 14, 48  
funny /ˈfuːni/ 14, 52  
furniture /ˈfɜːniʃər/ 41  

GP (general practitioner)  
/dʒp/ 'pɪt, dʒəˈpeəral prækˈtʃər/ 22  
gallery as in art gallery /ˈgæləri/ 58  
grammar /ˈɡræmər/ 49  
garage /ˈɡærɪdʒ/ 38  
garden /ˈɡɑːdn/ 38  
gardening /ˈɡɑːdnɪŋ/ 50  
garlic /ˈɡɑːlɪk/ 25  
gate /ˈɡet/ 56  
gents /ˈdʒɛnts/ 53  
geography /ˈdʒɪɡrəfɪ/ 42  
German /dʒəˈmən/ 4  
Germany /dʒəˈmənɪ/ 4  
getic as in 'get' 30, 31, 80  
getic (as become) /ˈɡet/ 16, 80  
getic (as buy) /ˈɡet/ 80  
getic (as fetch) /ˈɡet/ 69  
getic (as obtain) /ˈɡet/ 42, 80  
getic (as receive) /ˈɡet/ 47, 80  
getic (as travel by) /ˈɡet/ 29, 30, 57, 80  
getic a grade /ˈɡetɪk ə ˈɡreɪd/ 42  
getic a job /ˈɡetɪk ə ˈdʒɒb/ 43  
getic an email /ˈɡetɪk ən ˈɛməl/ 47  
getic divorced /ˈɡetɪd ˈdɪvɔːd/ 10  
getic dressed /ˈɡetɪd ˈdrest/ 17  
getic lost /ˈɡetɪst/ 58  
getic married /ˈɡetɪd ˈmərriッド/ 10, 15  
getic off /ˈɡetɪf/ 11, 29, 30, 56  
getic on /ˈɡetɪn/ 11, 29, 30, 56, 73  
getic on with someone /ˈɡetɪn ən wɪð ˈsæmən/ 15  
getic to know someone /ˈɡetɪk tu ˈnɔː ˈsæmən/ 15  
getic to work /ˈɡetɪk tu ˈwɜːk/ 17  
getic up /ˈɡetɪp/ 17  
getic up /ˈɡetɪp/ 17  
getic a girlfriend /ˈɡetɪf ˈɡɜːrlfrend/ 10, 15  
getic Delaware /ˈɡetɪn ˈdʒɔrɪdəl/ 13, 52  
getic give someone a hand /ˌɡɪv ˈsʌmən ə ˈhænd/ 66  
getic something up /ˌɡɪvɪŋ ˈsʌmənɪŋ ˌəp/ 73  
getic glasses /ˈɡlɑːsɪz/ 28  
getic gloves /ˈɡloʊvz/ 18  
getic /goʊ/ 18  
getic (as do something) /ˈgəʊ/ 17, 22, 50  
getic (as move or travel) /ˈgəʊ/ 31, 33  
getic ahead /ˈɡəʊ ə hɛd/ 63  
getic and see /ˈɡəʊ ən ˈziː/ 22  
getic back /ˈɡəʊ ˈbæk/ 73  
getic down /ˈɡəʊ ˈdaʊn/ 76  
getic for a walk /ˈɡəʊ fər ə ˈwɔːk/ 57  
getic on a (guided) tour /ˈɡəʊ ən ə (ˈɡʌیدɪd) ˈtʊər/ 58  
getic online /ˈɡəʊ ənˈlайн/ 47  
getic out /ˈɡəʊ əˈtʊt/ 17, 73  
getic out for a meal/a drink /ˈɡəʊ əˈtʊt fɔːr ə ˈmiːl/ 64, 73  
getic out with someone /ˈɡəʊ əˈtʊt wɪð ˈsæmən/ 15  
getic sightseeing /ˈɡəʊ ˈsɪtʃɪtɪŋ/ 58  
getic to primary school /ˈɡəʊ tə ˈprɪməri skɔːl/ 42  
getic up /ˈɡəʊ əp/ 73  
getic /ˈɡəʊ/ 49  
getic good afternoon /ˈɡʊd ˈɔːfnər/ 60  
getic good at something /ˈɡʊd ət ˈsʌmtʃɪŋ/ 42  
getic good evening /ˈɡʊd ˈɛvənr/ 60  
getic good-looking /ˈɡʊd ˈlʊkɪŋ/ 13  
getic good luck /ˈɡʊd lʊk/ 61  
getic good morning /ˈɡʊd ˈmɔrnɪŋ/ 60  
getic good to meet you /ˈɡʊd tu ˈmiːt juː/ 60  
getic goodbye /ˈɡʊdby/ 60  
getic goodnight /ˈɡʊdnɪt/ 60, 61  
getic grade /ˈɡreɪd/ 42  
getic graduate /ˈɡrəˌdjuːt/ 43  
getic graduate v /ˈɡrəˌdjuːteɪt/ 43  
getic grams /ˈɡræms/ 26  
getic granddaughter /ˈɡrændˈdɑːtɜːr/ 10  
getic grandfather /ˈɡrændfɑːθər/ 10  
getic grandmother /ˈɡrændməˈðɜːr/ 10  
getic grandson /ˈɡrændzɔn/ 10  
getic grapes /ɡrɛps/ 25  
getic grass /ɡrɑːs/ 36  
getic great /ˈgreɪt/ 55, 64, 65  
getic Great Britain /ˈɡreɪt ˈbrɪtən/ 4  
getic Greece /grɛs/ 4  
getic Greek /grɪk/ 4  
getic green /ɡriːn/ 18  
getic grey /ˈɡreɪ/ 13, 18  
getic grilled /ɡrɪld/ 28  
getic ground floor /graʊnd ˈfɜːrəl/ 38  
getic group /ɡrʊp/ 51  
getic grow /ɡruː/ 56  
getic grow up /ˈɡruː əp/ 73  
getic guests /ɡestz/ 55  
getic guide /ɡuɪd/ 58  
getic guidebook /ˈɡaɪdˌbʊk/ 58  
getic guitar /ˈɡɪtər/ 50, 51  
getic gym /dʒɪm/ 17, 50, 55  

hair /heər/ 12, 40  
hairdresser /ˈheərdrɛsɚ/ 44  
half /hɑːf/ 26, 49  
half past /hɑːf ˈpɑːst/ 2  
half price /hɑːf ˈprɪs/ 20  
half-time /hɑːt ˈtaim/ 49  
hand /hænd/ 24  
hand (as part of the body) /hænd/ 12  
hand as in give someone a hand /ˈhænd/ 66  
hand luggage /ˈhænd ˈlʌɡɪdʒ/ 56  
handbag /ˈhændbæɡ/ 18  
hands as in shake hands /ˈhændz/ 60  

WORD LIST 243
happen /haep/ 51
happy /haep/ 16
happy birthday /haep ‘bedθədi/ 61
happy Christmas /haep ‘kresθəms/ 61
happy New Year /haep ni: θi ‘neəri/ 61
hard adv /ha:rd/ 42
hard copy /ha:rd ‘kɔpi/ 46
hard drive /ha:rd ‘draiv/ 46
hardly ever /ha:rdli ‘evəri/ 17
hardworking /ha:rd‘wɔ:kɪŋ/ 14
hat /hæt/ 18
hate /hæt/ 48
have /hæv/ 79
have (= do something) /hæv/ 17, 40, 56, 69
have (= eat/drink) /haev/ 28
have used in greetings /haev/ 61
have a baby /haev ə ‘beibɪ/ 15
have a seat /haev ə ‘sit/ 27
have got /haev ‘got/ 10, 13, 21, 26, 79, 80
have got to /haev ‘got tə/ 60
have to /haev tə/ 45
head /hed/ 12
headache /hed‘æk/ 22
healthy /helti/ 36
hear /hɛə(r)/ 53
heating as in central heating /ˈhiːtɪŋ/ 55
heavy /’hevi/ 21
height /hɛйт/ 13
hello /’heləʊ/ 60
help /help/ 19, 66
helpful /’helpfl/ 55, 70
in, in there /’ɪn, ɪn θeər/ 60
high /haɪ/ 34, 45
hill /hɪl/ 16
hire /haɪə(r)/ 54
historic /’hɪstərɪk/ 35
history /’hɪstəri/ 42
hob /hɒb/ 39
hobby /’hɒbi/ 50
hockey as in ice hockey /’hɔki/ 49
hold /həuld/ 11
holiday /’həʊlədeɪ/ 54, 61, 79
home /hoʊm/ 38
homework /hoʊm‘wɜ:k/ 39, 42
hope /hoʊp/ 60
horrible /’hɔrəbl/ 14, 19
horror /’hɔrəri/ 52
horse /hɔ:z/ 36
hospital /’hɒspɪtəl/ 45
hot /hɒt/ 21
hours /həʊrs/ 45
house /hɔuz/ 38
housewife /’hɔuzˈwɪf/ 44
household /’hɔushəʊld/ 44
housework /’hɔuswɜ:k/ 44
How about you? /hɔu ə’baʊt ju:z/ 62
How are things? /hɔu ə ’θɪŋz/ 60
How are you? /hɔu ə ‘jʊ/ 60
How do you do? /hau da jo ’dau/ 60
how far /hau ˈfa(r)/ 32, 62
how long (= length) /hau lɔŋ/ 13
how long (= time) /hau lon/ 29, 62
how many /hau ‘meni/ 26, 62
how much /hau mʌtʃ/ 13, 26, 45, 59
how often /hau ˈəʊfən/ 62
how old /hau ˈəʊld/ 8, 10
however /hauˈver/ 77
humid /’hju:mid/ 21
hundred /’hʌndrəd/ 1
Hungarian /’hʌŋɡərjən/ 4
Hungary /’hʌŋɡəri/ 4
hungry /’hʌŋɡri/ 16
hurt /hɜ:t/ 22
husband /’hʌzbənd/ 10
hypermarket /’haɪpərmeθək/ 37
ICT (information communication technology) /’aɪθ/ (infomatʃən kamjuˈneɪʃən tek’tɪŋdʒi)/ 42
IT (information technology) /’aɪθ/ (infomatʃən tek’nolədʒi)/ 42
ice /aɪs/ 21
ice cream /aɪs ’krɪm/ 28
ice hockey /aɪs həki/ 49
icon /’aɪkɒn/ 46
icy /’aɪsɪ/ 23
I’d like /aɪd lai/ 26, 27
I’d like to /aɪd tə/ 55
I’d love to /aɪd lov tə/ 64
idea /aɪ’diə/ 65
if /ɪf/ 78
ill as in be/feel ill /ɪl/ 16, 22
I’ll leave it/them /aɪ lɛv ɪt, ɪm/ 19
I’m afraid /aɪm ə’friːd/ 55, 63, 64
I’m afraid not /aɪm ə’friːd ‘nɔt/ 55
impossible /ɪm’pɔsəbl/ 70
in (= place) /ɪn/ 76
in (= taking part) /ɪn/ 52
in (= time) /ɪn/ 2, 74
in as in Who’s in it? /ɪn/ 52
in a minute /ɪn ə ‘mɪnɪt/ 75
in advance /ɪn ədˈvəns/ 30
in front of /ɪn ‘frʌnt əv/ 76
in love /ɪn lʌv/ 16
in (my twenties, etc.) /ɪn maɪ ’twentiəz/ 13
in order to /ɪn ‘ɔrdər tə/ 77
in the north /ɪn da ‘nɔθ/ 34
in the paper /ɪn ə ‘pəpər/ 53
inbox /’ɪnθəks/ 47
included as in included in the price /ɪnkluːdɪd əz ɪnkludrd ɪn ɪnkludrd ɪn θe pərs/ 55
indefinite article /ɪndɪfɪnət ‘ərksta/ 6
India /’ɪndɪə/ 4

244 WORD LIST
limit as in speed limit /ˈlɪmɪt/ 32
line /lайн/ 68
lip /lɪp/ 12
listen to /ˈlɪsn ˈtɔː/ 50, 53
literature /ˈlɪtərəri/ 42
literary /ˈlɪtərəri/ 26
little /ˈlɪtl/ 19
little as in a little /ˈlɪtl/ 71
living room /ˈlɪvɪŋ ˈrʊm/ 38
location /ˈləˌkwən/ 35
lonely /ˈlənli/ 36
long ago /lɒŋ/ 13, 19
long as in How long...? /lɒŋ/ 29, 62
long as in a metre long /lɒŋ/ 29
long hours /lɒŋ ˈhɔːrs/ 45
look /lʊk/ 19
look after /lʊk ˈɔːftər/ 36
look round /lʊk ˈraʊnd/ 58
look something up /lʊk ˈsʌmtʃɪŋ ʌp/ 73
lounge /ˈlʌŋz/ 19
loopy driver /ˈləʊpi ˈdrɪvə(r)/ 44
lose /lɔs/ 49, 67
lot as in a lot, a lot of /lɔt/ 21
lots as in lots to do /lɔts/ 35
lottery /ˈlɔtəri/ 20
love /lʌv/ 48
love story /ˈlʌv ˈstɔːri/ 52
lovely /ˈlʌvli/ 19, 61
low as in low wages /lɔw/ 45
luck as in good luck /lʌk/ 61
luggage /ˈlʌɡidʒ/ 56
lunch /ˈlʌntʃ/ 79

MA (Master of Arts) /ˈeɪ mɑːstər əv ˈɑːts/ 43
MP3 player /ˈem piː ˈbɹɪk ˈplɛks(ə)r/ 47
Mr /ˈmɜːstər/ 9
Mrs /ˈmɜːz/ 9
MS /ˈmɪs/ 9
MSc (Master of Science) /ˈem əˈsɪst (mɑːstər əv ˈsənsəs)/ 43
machine as in cash machine /ˈmeɪʃən/ 59
machine as in washing machine /ˈmeɪʃən/ 39
mad /mæd/ 70
magazine /ˈmæɡəˌziːn/ 53
main course /ˈmɛn kɔːs/ 28
main road /ˈmɛn rɔːd/ 32
major /ˈmeɪdʒə(r)/ 34
make (= perform an action) /meɪk/ 45
make (= produce) /meɪk/ 39, 46
make-up /ˈmeɪkəp/ 40
manager /ˈmeɪnʤə(r)/ 43
Mandarin /ˈmændərɪn/ 4
mango /ˈmæŋɡoʊ/ 25
many as in how many /ˈmæni/ 26, 61
map /mæp/ 58
marital status /ˈmərtəl ˈsteɪtəs/ 9

mark /mɑːrk/ 42
market /ˈmɑːrkɪt/ 35, 37
married /ˈmeədɪd/ 8
married as in get married /ˈmeədɪd/ 10, 15
match n (= game) /meɪtʃ/ 49
matches n (= to start a fire) /meɪtʃz/ 26
maths (mathematics) /ˈmæθz/ 42
matter as in it doesn’t matter /ˈmeɪtə(r)/ 67
matter as in What’s the matter? /ˈmeɪtə(r)/ 16, 22
maybe /ˈmeɪbi/ 65
meal /miːl/ 28, 64
mean /miːn/ 7
meaning /ˈmɛnɪŋ/ 7
meat /miːt/ 24
medal /ˈmedəl/ 53
medicine (= subject of study) /ˈmedsɪn/ 43
medicine (e.g. aspirin) /ˈmedsɪn, ˈmedən/ 21
medium (= size) /ˈmiːdɪəm/ 19
medium (= steak) /ˈmiːdɪəm/ 28
medium-length /ˈmiːdɪəm ˈlɛŋθ/ 13
medium-sized /ˈmiːdɪəm ˈsaɪzd/ 35
meet (= come together) /miːt/ 45
meet (= for the first time) /miːt/ 15, 60
meet as in nice/good to meet you /miːt/ 60
meeting /ˈmiːtɪŋ/ 45
melon /ˈmɛlən/ 25
memory stick /ˈmɛmərɪ stɪk/ 46
menu /ˈmɛnjuː/ 28
merry Christmas /ˈmɜːri ˈkrɪsməs/ 61
message /ˈmesɪdʒ/ 47
message as in text message /ˈmesɪdʒ/ 69
Mexican /ˈmɛksɪkən/ 4
Mexico /ˈmɛskikoʊ/ 4
microwave /ˈmaɪkrəˈrɔvn/ 39
midday /ˈmɪdˌdeɪ/ 2
middle /ˈmɪdl/ 46
middle-aged /ˈmɪdl ˈeɪdʒəd/ 13
Middle East /ˈmɪdl ˈeɪst/ 4
midnight /ˈmɪdnɪt/ 2
might /mɛt/ 54
mile /mɪl/ 35
miles an hour /ˈmaɪlz ən ˈauər/ 32
milk /mɪlk/ 26, 27
million /ˈmɪljən/ 1
mind as in Do you mind if...? /ˈmaɪnd/ 63
mind as in never mind /ˈmaɪnd/ 55, 67
mineral water /ˈmɪnərəl ˈwɔːtər/ 28
mirror /ˈmɜːrɪr/ 40
miss /mɪs/ 30
Miss /ˈmɪs/ 9
missing /ˈmɪsɪŋ/ Starter
mistake /ˈmɪstkeɪk/ Starter
mixed salad /ˈmɪksd ˈsɛld̩/ 28
mobile number /ˈməʊbəl ˈnʌmbər/ 69
modern /’mɔdn/  35, 38
modern languages /’mɔdn  1’læŋgwɪdʒɪ/  42
moment as in at the moment /’məʊmənt/  69, 75
moment as in just a moment /’məʊmənt/  69
monitor /’mɒnɪtə(r)/  46
month /’mʌnθ/  2
more as in some more /’mɔr(ə)r/  28
morning /’mɔrɪŋ/  2
morning as in good morning /’mɔrnɪŋ/  60
mosque /’mɒski/  35
most /’mɒst/  53
mother /’mʌðə(r)/  10
mother tongue /’mʌðə(r) ’tʌŋ/  9
motorway /’mɔtərweɪ/  32
mountain /’maʊntən/  34
mouse /’maʊs/  46
mouse mat /’maʊs  maɪt/  46
moustache /’maʊstʃ(ə)ʃ/  13
mouth /’maʊθ/  12
move /’mʌv/  46
movie /’mʌvi/  52
much as in how much /’mʌtʃ/  13, 26, 45, 45, 59
much as in nothing much /’mʌtʃ/  53
mum /’mʌm/  10
museum /’mjʊziːəm/  35, 58
mushroom /’mʌʃrəm/  25
music /’mjuːzɪk/  42, 50
musical /’mjuːzɪkl/  50
mussels /’mʌsəlz/  24
must /’mʌst/  60
name as in family name, first name /’nʌm/  8
napkin /’neɪpkn/  28
narrow /’nærəʊ/  70
nationality /’neɪʃənaləti/  4
near /’niːə(r)/  29, 76
nearest /’niːəst/  62
nearly /’niːlə(r)/  2
necessary /’nɛsəsəri/  70
neck /’nek/  12
need /’niːd/  19, 23, 66
neighbour /’nɪbər/  38
neighbourhood /’nɪbərhaʊd/  38
nervous /’nɜvəs/  16
not /’not/  49
never /’nevə(r)/  17
never mind /’nevə mənd/  55, 67
New Year /’njuː ɪə(r)/  61
New Year’s Day /’njuː jəz  ’deɪ/  3
news /’njuːs/  53
newsagent’s /’njuːzədʒəntz/  37
newspaper /’njuːspɛpə(r)/  53
next (of a train) /’nekst/  30
next stop /’nekst  stɒp/  29
next to /’nekst tʊ, tə/  76
next week /’nekst ’wɛk/  75
nice /’nɒs/  14, 19, 79
nice as in have a nice day/evening /’nɒs/  61
nice to meet you /’nɒs ta  ’mɪt  ’juː/  60
nice to see /’nɪs tə  ’sɪ/  10
night (≈ saying goodnight) /’nایt/  60
night as in a night /’nایt/  2
night as in the night /’nایt/  55
night as in last night /’nایt/  75
nightlife /’nایtlaɪf/  35
nil /’naɪl/  49
no entry /’neɪtrə/  33
no exit /’nɪkst/  33
no parking /’neɪpɑːkɪŋ/  33
no problem /’nɒ  ’prəbləm/  63
no smoking /’nɒ smɔʊkɪŋ/  33
noisy /’nɔɪsɪ/  70
none /’nʌn/  53
noodles /’nuːdlz/  26
normally /’nəʊməlɪ/  17
north /’nɔːθ/  34, 35
North America /’nɔːθ  ’eɪmərɪkəs/  4
northeast /’nɔːθ  ’ɛst/  35
northeast /’nɔːθ  ’wést/  35
Northern Ireland /’nɔrθ  ’aɪlənd/  4
nose /’nəʊz/  12
not bad /’nɒt  ’bæd/  60
notebook /’nəʊtboʊk/  5
notes /’nəʊts/  20, 56
nothing as in there’s nothing to do /’nʌθʌθ/  35
nothing much /’nʌθɪŋ  ’mʌtʃ/  53
nothing to declare /’nʌθɪŋ tə  ’dɪklər(e)r/  33
noticeboard /’nəʊtɪzbɔːd/  5
noun /’nʌn/  6
number as in phone number /’nʌmər(ə)r/  69
number as in PIN number /’nʌmər(ə)r/  20
number as in wrong number /’nʌmər(ə)r/  69
number 1 (in the singles chart) /’nʌmbr ’wʌn/  51
nurse /’nɜːs/  44
nursery school /’nɜːsəri  skəul/  42
occasionally /’ɔkʃələntli/  17
occupation /’ɔkˈpeʃ(ə)n/  9
o’clock (of time) /’əʊklɒk/  2
o’clock (of a train) /’əʊklɒk/  30
odd /’əʊd/  70
of course /’ɒv kɜːs/  28, 63
offer /’ɒfə(r)/  66
office as in post office /’ɒfɪs/  59
office as in ticket office /’əʊfɪs/  30
officer as in police officer /’əʊfɪs(ə) r/  44
often /’ɒfən, ə’fən/  17
often as in how often /’ɒfən, ə’fən/  62
oil /’əʊl/  28
old /’əʊld/  8, 10
olive oil /’əʊlɪv  ’əʊl/  26
olives /’əʊlvaɪz/  26

WORD LIST 247
on (preposition of place) /on/ 76
on (preposition of time) /on/ 74
on a river /on s'rivə(r)/ 35
on holiday /ˈɒn ˈhɒlədəi/ 54
on my own /ˈɒn maɪ ˈɔm/ 14
on the coast /ˈɒn dəˈkəʊst/ 34, 35
on the first floor /ˈɒn də ˈfɜːrθ flɔː(r)/ 38
on the phone /ˈɒn dəˈfoʊn/ 69
on time /ˈɒn ˈtaɪm/ 56
on TV/on the radio
/in fa: /ˈviː, ˈɒn də ˈrɛdɪəʊ/ 53
on as in What’s on? /ˈɒn əz ɪn ˈwɒtz ən / 52
once /wʌns/ 17
onion /ˈɒnjən/ 25
online /ˈɒnlain, ˈənlən / 20, 47
only adv /ˈɔnli/ 70
only adv /ˈɔnli/ 71
open /ˈəʊpən/ 11, 46, 62
opera singer /ˈɒprə sæŋ(t)ə(r)/ 51
opinion /əˈpɪnjən/ 35, 53, 68
opposite adj /ˈɔppəzɪt/ Starter, 7
opposite prep /ˈɔppəzit/ 31, 76
opposites as in complete opposites /ˈɔpəzıtıts/ 14
or so as in for an hour or so /ɔrˈsɔʊ/ 57
orange adj /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ 18
orange n /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ 25
orange juice /ˈɔrɪndʒ dʒuːz/ 27
orchestra /ˈɔrkestrə/ 51
order /ˈɔrda(r)/ 27, 28
order as in in order to /ˈɔrda(r)ə/ 77
order as in out of order /ˈɔrda(r)ə/ 29
organize /ˈɒɡənaɪz/ 45
organized /ˈɒɡənaɪzaɪd/ 14
other as in each other /ˈʌðə(r)/ 15
out of /ˈaʊt əv/ 76
out of order /ˈaʊt əv ˈɔrda(r)/ 33
outdoors /ˈaʊtdɔːrs/ 37
outside adv /ˈaʊtˌsайд/ 38
outside prep /ˈaʊtˌsайд/ 29
oven /ˈəʊvən/ 39
over (above/higher than something) /ˈəʊvə(r)/ 76
over (more than a number, price, etc.) /ˈəʊvə(r)/ 26, 35
overtake /ˈəʊvərkεrk/ 32
overweight /ˈəʊvərweɪt/ 13
own v /ɔʊn/ 36
own as in on my own /əʊn/ 14
PC (personal computer) /ˌpiːˈsiː/ (paʊzəl kəmˈpiːtə(r)/ 46
PhD (Doctor of Philosophy) /ˌpiː ˌθei r/ (daɪkətər əv fɪˈteɪʃən)/ 43
p.m. /ˈpiː ˈem/ 2
park /ˈpɑrk/ 54
pocket /ˈpɑkt/ 26
pain /ˈpeɪn/ 22
pair /ˈpeə(r)/ 18
palace /ˈpæls/ 35
pale /ˈpeɪl/ 18
paint as in frying pan /ˈpeɪnt/ 39
paper (newspaper) /ˈpɛpə(r)/ 53
d paper as in piece of paper /ˈpɛpə(r)/ 5
paper shop /ˈpeɪpər ʃɒp/ 37
parking /ˈpɑrkɪŋ/ 38, 55
part-time adj /ˈpɑrt ˈtaɪm/ 45
participate as in past participle /ˈpɑrtɪsɪpeɪt, ˈpɑrtɪsɪpl/ 6
participate in /ˈpɑrtɪsɪpeɪt ɪn/ 71
particularly /ˈpɑrtɪsɪpləri/ 71
partner /ˈpɑrtnə(r)/ 15
party /ˈpɑrti/ 64
pass an exam /ˈpæs ən ˈeɪkˈzæm/ 42
passenger /ˈpæsɪŋər/ 30, 56
passport /ˈpɑspɔrt/ 54
passport control /ˈpɑspɔrt ˈkɒntroʊl/ 56
past /ˈpɑst/ 76
past as in five past six /ˈpɑst/ 2
past participle /ˈpɑst ˈpɑːstɪpəl, ˈpɑst ˈpɑːstɪpəl/ 6
pasta /ˈpɑstə/ 26
paste /ˈpeɪst/ 46
path /ˈpæθ/ 36
pavement /ˈpeɪvmənt/ 32
pay /ˈpeɪ/ 19
PE (physical education) /piː ˈiː (fɪzɪkəl ˈedʒuˈkeɪʃən)/ 42
peace /ˈpiːs/ 53
peach /ˈpiːtʃ/ 25
pear (fruit) /ˈpiːr/ 25
peas /ˈpiːz/ 25
pedestrian crossing /ˈpɛdɪstrɪən ˈkrɒsɪŋ/ 32
pen /ˈpɛn/ 5
pen as in board pen /ˈpɛn/ 5
pencil /ˈpɛnsl/ 5
pencil sharpener /ˈpɛnsl ʃɑːpənə(r)/ 5
pepper (spice) /ˈpɛpər/ 28
pepper (vegetable) /ˈpɛpər/ 25
per cent /ˈpɜr ˈsent/ 59
perfect /ˈpɜrfɪkt/ 57
perform /ˈpɜrfɔrm/ 51
perimeter /ˈpɜrɪmɪtər/ 40
perhaps /ˈpərˈhæps/ 54, 65
person /ˈpɜrsən/ 13
personally /ˈpɜrsonəli/ 68
petrol station /ˈpɛtrəl stəˈʃən/ 12
pharmacy /ˈfɑrməsi/ 22
phone n, v /fəʊn/ 69
store as in department store /ˈstor(e) / 37
storm /ˈstorm / 21
story as in love story /ˈstɔːr(ə) / 52
straight adj /ˈstræt(ə) / 13
straight as in straight on /ˈstræt(ə) / 31
strange /ˈstræŋɡ / 70
strawberry /ˈstrɔːbərɪ / 25
strong /ˈstrɒŋ / 70
study /ˈstʌdi / 38
studied as in business studies /ˈstʌdiəd / 43
stupid /ˈstjuːpid / 14
subject /ˈsʌbdʒekt / 42
sugar /ˈʃʊɡər / 26
suggestion /ˌsədʒəˈneɪʃn / 65
suit /sjuːt / 18
suitcase /ˈsjuːtˈkæs / 54, 56
summer /ˈsʌmər / 3
sun /sʌn / 21
sunbathe /ˈsʌnˌbɑːθ / 57
sunglasses /ˈsʌŋɡləz / 18
sunny /ˈsʌni / 21
sunshine /ˈsʌnʃiːn / 21
supermarket /ˌsjuːpəˈmɑːkt / 37
sure adj /ʃʊr / 7, 65, 68
sweat /swet / 28, 63
surname /ˈsɜːrnəm / 9
surprised /ˈsɜːprɪst / 16
sweater /ˈswetər / 18
sweet /swiːt / 25
swim n /swɪm / 79
Swiss /ˈswɪs / 4
Switzerland /ˈswɪtsəlɜːnd / 4

TV /tʃiːv / 41, 53
table (= furniture) /ˈteibl / 5
table (= list of facts/words) /ˈteibl / Starter, 49
table tennis /ˈteibl tenis / 50
tablet /ˈteiblɪt / 23
take (= buy) /teɪk / 19
take (= carry) /teɪk / 63
take (= have a certain size) /teɪk / 19
take (= use a form of transport) /teɪk / 30, 32, 57
take (a tablet/medicine) /teɪk / 23
take an exam /teɪk ən ˈɛɡzəm / 42
take away /teɪk əˈweɪ / 27
take off (= leave the ground) /teɪk əˈf / 56, 73
take off (= remove) /teɪk əˈf / 40, 73
take out, take something out /teɪk əˈtəʊt, teɪk somˈθɪŋ əˈt / 39
take photos /teɪk ˈfeɪtʃəz / 58
take the first turning /teɪk ðə fɜːrst ˈtɜːnɪŋ / 31
tall /tɔːl / 11
tap /tæp / 39
tart /tɑːt / 28
taste /tɛst / 25
taxi driver /ˈtæksi ˈdreiə(r) / 44
tea /tiː / 27
teacher /ˈtiːʃər / 44
team /tiːm / 49
technology as in design and technology /tekˈnɒlədʒi / 42
technology as in IT, ICT /tekˈnɒlədʒi / 42
teenager /ˈtiːniːdʒər / 13
tennis /ˈteniːs / 13
teeth /ˈtiːθ / 17, 40
telephone /ˈteləfəʊn / 41
temperature /ˈtɛmpərətʃər / 22
temple /ˈtempəl / 35
tennis /ˈteniːs / 17, 49
tennis as in table tennis /ˈteniːs / 50
term /ˈtɜːm / 43
terminus /ˈtɜːrnəm / 56
terrible /ˈterəbl / 36, 42, 79
text v, n /tekst / 69
Thai /tʰæi / 4
Thailand /ˌtʰælənd / 4
thank you /θæŋk juː / 66
thanked /θæŋkt / 26, 31, 60, 61, 66
that’s all /θæt’s ɔːl / 26
the news /ðiː ˈnjuːz / 53
the same to you /ðiː seɪm tuː / 61
then /ðen / 78
then as in See you then /ðen / 60
thin /θɪn / 13
think /θɪŋk / 48, 68
third /θɜːd / 3
thirsty /θɜːsti / 16
this evening, this weekend, etc. /ðiːz ˈɪvənɪŋ, ðiːz ˈwɛkənd / 75
this is (used when introducing someone) /ðiːz ɪz / 60
this is (used on the phone) /ðiːz ɪz / 69
thousand /ˈθaʊzænd / 1
thirteenth /ˈθɜːtnθ / 52
throat /θrɔːt / 22
through /θruː / 76
thumb /θʌm / 12
thunder /ˈθʌndər / 21
ticket /ˈtɪkɪt / 30, 56
ticket office /ˈtɪkɪt ˈɒfɪs / 30
tidy /ˈtændi / 14
tie /tɛi / 18
tight /tɛɪt / 19
tights /tɛɪts / 18
time /tɜːm / 2, 61
time as in half-time /tɜːm / 49
time as in have a nice time /tɜːm / 79
time as in in (ten days’) time /tɜːm / 75
timetable /ˌtɪmɪteɪbl / 29, 30
tin /tɪn / 25, 26
tired /ˈtaɪəd/ 16

tissue /ˈtɪʃə/ 21, 40

toast sandwich
sandwich /ˈsandwiʃ/ 27
toe /toʊ/ 12
tomorrow /ˈtɒmɔrəʊ/ 75
tongue as in mother tongue /ˈtʌŋ/ 9
too (= also) /tʊ/ 61, 77
too (= more than is good) /tʊ/ 19
tooth /θuːθ/ 12

Toothache
Toothbrush /θuːθbruʃ/ 40
Toothpaste /θuːθpeɪst/ 40
top (= clothes) /tɒp/ 18
top (= highest part) /tɒp/ 38, 49
touch /tʌʃ/ 11

tour /ˈtʊər/ 58

tourist /ˈtʊərɪst/ 55
towel /ˈtəʊl/ 40
town /tɔʊn/ 35
town centre /ˈtɔʊn ˈsentə(r)/ 38

Traffic
Traffic jam /ˈtræfɪk dʒæm/ 32
Traffic light /ˈtræfɪk lɪt/ 32
train /tren/ 30
train driver /ˈtren draɪvə(r)/ 44
trainers /ˈtrenərz/ 18

Transport
as in public transport /ˈtrænspɔːrt/ 36

Travel insurance /trəvl ɪnˈʃərəns/ 54

Traveller’s cheque /trəˈvɛlərz ˈʃeɪk/ 59

travelling /ˈtrævlɪŋ/ 50

tree /triː/ 36

tree as in family tree /triː/ 10
trolley /ˈtrolli/ 37, 56

trouser /ˈtraʊzə(r)/ 18

trouser /ˈtraʊzə(r)/ 18
try /traɪ/ 23
try on /traɪ ɔn/ 19, 73

T-shirt /ˈtʃɜːtʃ/ 18

turn /tɜːrn/ 24

Turkey /ˈtɜːki/ 4

Turkish /ˈtɜːkiʃ/ 4

turn something off /tɜːn ˈsæməl ˈɒf/ 39

turn something on /tɜːn ˈsæməl ˈɒn/ 11, 39, 73

turning /ˈtɜːnɪŋ/ 31

twice /twɪs/ 17

twin room /ˈtwin ruːm/ 55

type /taɪp/ 45

typical /ˈtɪpɪkl/ 58

UK (United Kingdom) /juːk ˈkeɪ/ 4

USA (United States of America) /juːs əˈsiː/ 4

ugly /ˈʌgli/ 13

umbrella /ˈʌmbrələ/ 18

unable /ˈʌnbəl/ 51

uncle /ˈʌnkl/ 10

uncomfortable /ˈʌnkomfərəbl/ 19

under (= less than) /ˈʌndə(r)/ 26, 35

undergraduate /ˈʌndərɡrəʊd/ 43

underline /ˈʌndərlайn/ 14

unemployed /ˌʌnmɒpld/ 44

unfortunately /ˌʌnfortjuˈniːtli/ 43

unfriendly /ˈʌnfrəndli/ 14

unhappy /ˈʌnhepi/ 16

uniform /ˈjuːnɪfɔːm/ 42

United Kingdom (UK) /juːnɪtɪd ˈkʌnmən/ 4

United States of America (USA) /juːnɪtɪd ˈstætɪz/ 4

university /juːnɪˈvɜːsəti/ 42

unnecessary /ˈʌnnɛcesəri/ 70

untidy /ˈʌntaɪdi/ 14

until /ˈʌntɪl/ 42, 75

unusual /ˈʌnˈʒuːʒuəl/ 70

up /ʌp/ 76

upstairs /ˈʌpstreɪz/ 38

use /juːz/ 40, 47

useful /juːˈfjuːzl/ 70

useless /juːˈlezəl/ 70

usually /juːˈʒuəli/ 17

utility room /juːˈtɪləti ˈruːm/ 38

vacancies as in no vacancies /ˈveikənsi/ 33

valley /ˈvælɪ/ 56

various /ˈvɜːriəs/ 50

verb /ˈvɜːb/ 6

very /ˈvɛri/ 19, 48, 60, 66

vet /ˈvet/ 44

views /ˈvaɪz/ 38

village /ˈvɪlədʒ/ 35

villager /ˈvɪlədʒə(r)/ 28

violent /ˈvaɪlənt/ 52

violins /ˈvaɪəlnz/ 53

violins /ˈvaɪəlnz/ 53

violet /ˈvaɪələt/ 51

vivid /ˈvɪvɪd/ 54

vista /ˈvɪstə/ 47, 58

volleyball /ˈvɒlɪbɒll/ 49

wages /ˈweɪdʒəz/ 45

waist /ˈweɪst/ 12

wait /weɪt/ 30

wake up /weɪk ˈʌp/ 73

Wales /ˈweɪlz/ 4

walk /wɔːk/ 17, 57, 79

walk v /wɔːk/ 6, 11

wall /wɔːl/ 41

want /wɒnt/ 64, 66

war /wɔːr/ 53
war film /ˈwɔːrfilm/ 52
wardrobe /ˈwɔːdrəʊb/ 40
wash n /wɔʃ/ 40, 79
wash v /wɔʃ/ 40
washbasin /ˈwɔʃbeɪn/ 40
washing machine /ˈwɔʃɪŋməʃiˈn/ 39
washing-up /ˈwɔʃɪŋʌp/ 39
waste /wæst/ 68
watch n /wɔtʃ/ 18
watch v /wɔtʃ/ 50, 53
water as in mineral water /ˈwɔtə(r)/ 28
wavy /ˈwɔvɪ/ 13
way /weɪ/ 31, 70
way in /weɪˈɪn/ 33
way out /ˈweɪaʊt/ 33
weak /weɪk/ 70
wear /wer/ 18, 40
weather forecast /ˈweðər fɔkast/ 53
web address /ˈweb adres/ 47
webcam /ˈwbekəm/ 46
website /ˈwbizet/ 47
week /wɛk/ 3, 17, 45, 55, 75
weekday /ˈwɛkdeɪ/ 17
weekend /ˈwɛkend/ 17, 61, 75, 79
weight /weɪt/ 13
welcome /ˈwelkəm/ 61
well (= in a good way) /wel/ 15, 42, 61
well (= not ill) /wel/ 16, 22, 60
well (used when you feel uncertain) /wel/ 65
well as in as well /welz/ 77
well done (= congratulations) /wel dəʊn/ 61
well done (= cooked for a long time) /wel dən/ 28
well known /wel ˈnɔːm/ 51
west /west/ 34, 35
west /west/ 21
what (used in questions) /wɒt/ 21, 27
what about? /ˈwɒt əˈbɔːt/ 65
what’s on? (= happening) /wɒts ˈɒn/ 52
what’s the matter? /wɒts ˈdiː ˈmætər/ 16, 21
when (= at what time) /wɛn/ 62
when (= the time something happened) /wɛn/ 78
where /weər/ 62
where are you from? /weər ə ˈfɜːrəm/ 4
whereabouts /weərəbaʊts/ 8
which /wɪtʃ/ 62
while /waɪl/ 78
while as in for a while /waɪl/ 22
white /waɪt/ 18, 27, 28
who /hu/ 62
whose /huːz/ 62
why /waɪ/ 62
wide /waɪd/ 70
wife /waɪf/ 10
win (= be best or first) /wɪn/ 49
win (money) /wɪn/ 20
wind /wɪnd/ 21
window /ˈwɪndəʊ/ 41
window seat /ˈwɪndəʊ sɛt/ 56
windy /ˈwɪndi/ 21
wine /ˈwɪn/ 28
winter /ˈwɪntər/ 3
wonderful /ˈwʊndərfl/ 36, 48
wood /wʊd/ 36
wool as in cotton wool /wʊl/ 23
word /wɜːd/ 6
work n /wɜrk/ 17
work v /wɜrk/ 42, 45
worried /ˈwɜrɪd/ 16
worry as in don’t worry /ˈwɜrɪ/ 66
worse /ˈwɜrəs/ 42
worth /wɜθ/ 62
wrist /rɪst/ 12
write /rait/ 43, 59
wrong (= causing problems) /rɒŋ/ 62
wrong (= not right) /rʊŋ/ 70
wrong number /rʊŋ ˈnʌmbə(r)/ 69
year /jɛər/ 3, 45
yellow /ˈjɛləʊ/ 18
yes, please /jɛz ˈplɪz, jɛz ˈplɪz/ 27, 66
yesterday /ˈjestədeɪ/ 75
you too /juː tu/ 61
young /jʌŋ/ 13
zero /ˈzɛrəʊ/ 69
Oxford **Word Skills**

Learn and practise English vocabulary

**Basic** for elementary and pre-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams

Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.

It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt